UG - BLISc LIBRARYAND SOCIETY

PAPER - I

Semester Pattern - CBCS

- By

Dr. B. Veena Kumari

Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara Un Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDOC)
Srl Venkateswara University

TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

Tirupathi,

REGISTRAR
8.V. UNIVERSIT
TIRUPATI

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

UNIT-I

| 1 11 | | Page No. |
|--------|---|----------|
| 1. LII | BRARY IN THE MODEREN SOCIETY Aims and Objectives | 1 |
| 1.0 | Introduction | 1 |
| 1.2 | Library in the Moderen Society | 2 |
| | 1.2.1 Library a Public Instution | 3 |
| 1.3 | Role in Education and Research Development | 3 |
| 1.4 | Dissemination of Information | 4 |
| 1.5 | Library Professon | 5 |
| 1.6 | Development of Librarianship in Moderen Society | 7 |
| | 1.6.1 Elements of Librarianship as a Profession | 7 |
| 1.7 | Library Functions in the Modern Society | 9 |
| 1.8 | Role of Library in Educagtion | 10 |
| | 1.8.1 Role of Library in Formal Education | 11 |
| 1.9 | Summary | 12 |
| 1.10 | Review Questions | 12 |
| | UNIT-II | |
| 2. FIV | YE LAWS OF LIBRARY SCIENCE | |
| 2.0 | Aims and Objectives | 13 |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 13 |
| 2.2 | First law books are for use | 14 |
| 2.3 | Second law every reader His/His book | 16 |
| | 2.3.1 The Second Law and Its Implementation | 17 |
| 2.4 | Third law every books its readers | 20 |
| | 2.4.1 Arrangement of Documents | 21 |
| | 2.4.2 Catalogue | 21 |
| 2.5 | Fourth law every books its readers | 23 |
| 2.6 | 2.5.1 Implications of the Law | 23 |
| 2.6 | Fifth law library is a growing organism | 25 |
| | 2.6.1 Implications Book Stock | 26 |
| | 2.6.2 Implications Weeding out of Books | 28 |
| 2.7 | 2.6.3 A Wider Interpretation of Five Laws | 28 29 |
| 2.7 | Summary Review Questions | 30 |
| ۷.0 | Teview Questions | 30 |

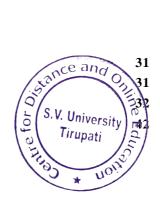
UNIT-III

3. TYPES OF LIBRARIES

3.0 Aims and Objectives

3.1 Introduction

Olline Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





| 3.4 | Special libraries | 46 |
|------------|---|-----------------|
| 3.5 | Growth of special libraries | 47 |
| 3.6 | Kinds of special libraries | 48 |
| 3.7 | Summary | 49 |
| 3.8 | Review Questions | 50 |
| | UNIT - IV | |
| 4. NA | TIONAL LIBRARY SYSTEM | |
| 4.0 | Aims and Objectives | 51 |
| 4.1 | Introduction | 51 |
| 4.2 | Type of national libraries | 53 |
| | 4.2.1 Functions | 53 |
| | 4.2.2 Bibliography | 54 |
| 4.0 | 4.2.3 Readers' Services | 55 |
| 4.3 | Famous national libraries | 55 55 |
| | 4.3.1 Indian National Library4.3.2 British Library | 55 57 |
| | 4.3.3 Library of Congress | 59 |
| 4.4 | Summary | 60 |
| 4.5 | Review Questions | 60 |
| | UNIT-V | |
| 5. NA | TIONALAND INTERNATIONAL LIBRARY ASSOCIATIONS | |
| 5.0 | Aims and Objectives | 61 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 62 |
| 5.2 | The Indian library association | 62 |
| | 5.2.1 The Indian Associations of Special Libraries and Information CentresOrig | gin 63 |
| 5.3 | American library association | 64 |
| | 5.3.1 The Library Association (United Kingdom) | 64 |
| 5.4 | International and national organizations | 65 |
| | 5.4.1 International Organizations | 65 |
| | 5.4.2 The International Fedaration of Library Associations5.4.3 National Organizations | 67 67 |
| 5.5 | Summary | 69 |
| 5.6 | Review questions | 70 |
| | UNIT-VI | |
| 6. HIS | STORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF LIBRARY MOVEMENT IN MODERN INDI | A |
| 6.0 | Aims and Objectives | 71 |
| 6.1 | Introduction | 71 |
| 6.2 | Public library movement | 72 |
| 6.3 | Factors in library legislations Madras public libraries Act,1948 Andra pradesh public library Act,1960 S.V. Universit | 76/ |
| 6.4 | Madras public libraries Act,1948 | 1/19 |
| 6.5 | Andra pradesh public library Act, 1960 S.V. University REGIS | TRAR |
| ind 6.6 | Karnataka public libraries Act, 1965 Tirupati | VERSIT/ PATI |
| rsity | | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC)
Srl Venkateswara Universit,
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 6.7 | Acts of other Indian states | 84 |
|--------|--|-----|
| 6.8 | Library science education in India | 87 |
| 6.9 | Summary | 91 |
| 6.10 | Review questions | 91 |
| | UNIT-VII | |
| 7. HIS | STORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF LIBERRIES IN USAAND UK | |
| 7.0 | Aims and Objectives | 93 |
| 7.1 | Introduction | 93 |
| 7.2 | History of libraries in USA | 94 |
| | 7.2.1 Essential Services and Functions | 95 |
| | 7.2.2 Continuing Education | 95 |
| | 7.2.3 Two World Wars and Libraries | 95 |
| | 7.2.4 Library of Congress | 96 |
| | 7.2.5 American Library Association | 96 |
| 7.3 | History of libraries in Britain | 96 |
| | 7.3.1 Emergence of Public Libraries | 97 |
| | 7.3.2 Libraries in Mechanic Institutes | 97 |
| | 7.3.3 First Library Act | 97 |
| | 7.3.4 Professional Organisation | 97 |
| | 7.3.5 Kenyan Report | 97 |
| | 7.3.6 Robert's Commission | 98 |
| 7.4 | British library | 99 |
| | 7.4.1 Library Association | 99 |
| 7.5 | Summary | 100 |
| 7.6 | Review questions | 100 |
| | UNIT-VIII | |
| 8. LIB | RARY RESOURCES SHARING | |
| 8.0 | Aims and Objectives | 101 |
| 8.1 | Introduction | 101 |
| 8.2 | Definition of resources sharing | 101 |
| 8.3 | Factors of resources sharing | 102 |
| 8.4 | Barriers to resources sharing | 102 |
| 8.5 | Preparing for resources sharing | 103 |
| 8.6 | Two more pre requisites | 103 |
| 8.7 | Library networking | 104 |
| 8.8 | Summary | 109 |
| 8.9 | Review questions | 110 |
| | | |

9. USER AND USER STUDIES

9.0, Aims and Objectives

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and 9 2
Online Education (CDC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Introduction

User and user studies





| | 9.3 | The need for user studies | 115 |
|---|--------------|---|------------|
| | 9.4 | Methodologies/Techniques for user studies | 116 |
| | 9.5 | User studies limitations and critisms | 118 |
| | 9.6 | Summary | 120 |
| | 9.7 | Review questions | 120 |
| | | UNIT - X | |
| | 10 | | |
| | 10. | PUBLIC RELATIONS AND EXTENSION SERVICES | 101 |
| | 10.0 10.1 | Aims and Objectives Introduction | 121 121 |
| | 10.2 | Definition and Importance of Public Relations Programme | 122 |
| | 10.3 | Public Relations and The Governing Body | 122 |
| | 10.4 | Libraries and the Book Trade | 122 |
| | 10.5 | Librarians and the Eductionalists | 123 |
| | 10.6 | P.R. Value of Personal Service | 123 |
| | 10.7 | Internal Arrangements | 123 |
| | 10.8 | Library Surves | 124 |
| | 10.9 | Some General Factors | 124 |
| | | Extension Work | 125 |
| | | Summary | 126 |
| | | Review questions | 126 |
| | | UNIT-XI | |
| | 11.0 | Aims and Objectives | 127 |
| | | Introduction | 128 |
| | 11.2 | Library Movement in India | 128 |
| | 11.3 | Professional Associations in India | 131 |
| | | 11.3.1 Indian Library Association (ILA) | 131 |
| | | 11.3.2 IASLIC | 132 |
| | | 11.3.2.1 The Objectives | 133 |
| | | 11.3.2.2 Organisation 11.3.2.3 Activities | 133 134 |
| | | 11.3.2.4 Professional Development | 134 |
| | | 11.3.2.5 Study Circles | 134 |
| | | 11.3.2.6 Group Activities | 135 |
| | | 11.3.2.7 Co-operation with Other Professional Bodies | 135 |
| | 11.4 | National Documentation Centres Insdoc, Nassdoc, Desidoc, Sendoc | 135 |
| | | 11.4.1 INSDOC - Its Objectives | 135 |
| | | 11.4.2 Functions | 136 |
| | | 11.4.3 Bibliographies and Information Service 11.4.4 Document Copy Supply Service | 136 136 |
| | | 11.4.5 Reprography Service | 136 |
| | | | 136/ |
| | 11.5 | 11.4.6 Information Dissemination & Retrieval of Information Nassdoc Summary | 13/6 |
| _ | 11.6 | Nassdoc Summary Review questions REGIS | TRAR |
| | 11.7 | Review questions (S.V. University) 8.V. UNI | |
| S | E) ity | Tirupati S | PATL |
| | | | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

REFERENCE & INFORMATION **SOURCES AND SERVICES**

PAPER - II

- Bv

Dr. B. Veena Kumari

Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara Un Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDOC)
Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education/

Sri Venkates vara University REGISTRAR Tirupathi APing at 17 502 8.V. UNIVERSITY TIRUPATI

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

UNIT - I

Page No. 1.NEED FOR REFERENCE AND INFORMATION SERVICES 1.0 Aims & Objectives 2 1.1 Introduction 2 1.2 Meaning and Definitions of Information 2 2 1.2.1 Meaning 1.2.2 Definitions 3 1.3 Characteristics of Information 3 5 1.4 Communication of Information 1.5 Information: Need and Purpose 6 1.6 Types of Information 7 7 1.6.1 Descriptive Information 1.6.2 Probabilistic Information 7 7 1.6.3 Qualitative Information 1.7 Information Services- Its Importance 1.7.1 Information Demand by Users 1.7.2 Increase in the Documents 7 1.7.3 Increase of Readers 8 8 1.7.4 Impact of Technology 8 1.7.5 Library Techniques 1.8 Nature & Purpose of Information Services in different Libraries 8 1.8.1 Academic Libraries 8 1.8.2 Public Libraries 9 9 1.8.3 Special Libraries 1.9 Types of Information Services 1.9.1 Reference Service 1.9.2 Current Awareness Service (CAS) 10 1.9.3 Selective Dissemination of information (SDI) 10 1.9.4 Translation Service 10 1.9.5 Bibliographic Services 10 1.9.6 Document Delivery Service (DDS) 11 1.10 Summary 11 sance and 1.11 Self Check Exercises 11 1.12 Model Questions 12 1.13 Suggested Readings S.V. University Centre for Distance and Tirupati Online Education (CDC®) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

UNIT - II

| | REFERENCE SERVICES SHORT RANGE AND LONG RANGE REFERENCE SERVICES | |
|------|--|----|
| 2.0 | Aims & Objectives | 13 |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 14 |
| 2.2 | Definition | 14 |
| 2.3 | Theories of reference service | 15 |
| 2.4 | Users Needs | 15 |
| | 2.4.1 Direct Method | 15 |
| | 2.4.1.1 Orientation Lectures | 16 |
| | 2.4.1.2 Library Tour | 16 |
| | 2.4.1.3 Reader Librarian Dialogue | 16 |
| | 2.4.1.4 Informal Meetings | 16 |
| | 2.4.2 Indirect Method | 16 |
| | 2.4.2.1 Library Guides | 16 |
| | 2.4.2.2 Display | 16 |
| | 2.4.2.3 Audio Visual Aids | 16 |
| 2.5 | Functions of Reference Service | 16 |
| 2.6 | Types of Reference Services | 17 |
| | 2.6.1 Short Range Reference Services | 17 |
| | 2.6.2 Long Range Reference Services | 17 |
| 2.7 | Steps involved in long range reference service | 18 |
| | 2.7.1 Preparation | 18 |
| | 2.7.2 Service | 18 |
| | 2.7.3 Assimilation | 19 |
| 2.8 | Difference between Short Range and Long Range Reference Services | 19 |
| 2.9 | Summary | 19 |
| 2.10 | Self Check Exercises | 20 |
| 2.11 | Model Questions | 20 |
| | UNIT - III | |
| 3. N | METHODS OF DISSEMINATION OF INFORMATION CURREN | T |
| A | WAR NESS SERVICE & SELECTIVE DISS MINATION OF | |
| I | NORMATION (SDI) | |
| 3.0 | Aims & Objectives | 22 |
| 3.1 | Introduction | 22 |

Introduction

Definition

Characteristics of Current Awareness Service

Methods of Providing CAS

S.V. University

Tirupati

TIRUPATL

3.3 DIRECTOR DIRECTOR 3.4
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

3.2

| 3.5 | Current Awareness Bulletins | 25 |
|--|---|------------|
| | 3.5.1 Current Awareness List | 25 |
| | 3.5.2 List of Additions | 26 |
| | 3.5.3 News Paper Clippings | 26 |
| | 3.5.4 Current Content Lists | 26 |
| | 3.5.5 List of forthcoming Meetings | 26 |
| | 3.5.6 Research in Progress List | 26 |
| 3.6 | Other Methods | 26 |
| | 3.6.1 Routing of Periodicals | 26 |
| | 3.6.2 Telephone Calls and Visits | 26 |
| | 3.6.3 Display | 26 |
| 3.7 | Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI) | 27 |
| | 3.7.1 Introduction | 27 |
| | 3.7.2 Definitions | 27 |
| | 3.7.3 Characteristics | 27 |
| | 3.7.4 Components of SDI | 28 |
| | 3.7.4.1 Selection | 28 |
| | 3.7.4.2 Preparation of Profiles | 28 |
| | 3.7.4.3. Matching | 28 |
| | 3.7.4.4 Feed Back | 29 |
| | 3.7.5 Advantages | 29 |
| 3.8 | Other Services | 29 |
| | 3.8.1 Translation Services | 29 |
| | 3.8.2 Reprography and Micrography | 32 |
| | 3.8.3 Document Delivery Service (DDS) | 36 |
| 3.9 | Summary | 39 |
| 3.10 | Self-Check Exercise | 39 |
| 3.11 | Model Questions | 39 |
| 3.12 | Suggested Readings | 40 |
| | UNIT - IV | |
| 4. I | DEVELOPMENT OF INFORMATION SERVICES IN | INDIA |
| 4.0 | Aims & Objectives | 41 |
| 4.1 | Introduction | 41 |
| 4.2 | Users Needs | 42 |
| 4.3 | Users Demand for Information Services | 42 |
| 4.4 | Information Services - Its Meaning & Importance | 42/ |
| 4.5 | Information Sources, Resources and Services Functions of Information Services S.V. University | MAS |
| TOR 4.6 | Functions of Information Services Significant Information Services Significant Information Services | REGISTRIAR |
| istance and⊿.7 ation (CDG€) ara University - 517 502. | Significant Information Services S.V. University Tirupati | TIRUPATL |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and 4
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 4.8 | Value of Information services | 45 |
|-------------------|---|------------|
| 4.9 | Information Services in India | 46 |
| 4.10 | Information Services in ICT Age | 46 |
| 4.11 | Information Services- Its Future Plans | 46 |
| 4.12 | Role of the UGC & INFLIBNET – Information Services | 47 |
| 4.13 | Summary | 47 |
| 4.14 | Self Check Exercises | 47 |
| 4.15 | Model Questions | 48 |
| | UNIT - V | |
| 5.] | REFERENCE AND INFORMATION SOURCES ITS KINDS | |
| 5.0 | Aims & Objectives | 50 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 50 |
| 5.2 | Definition | 51 |
| 5.3 | Reference Sources: | 51 |
| 5.4 | Ready Reference Sources | 53 |
| | 5.4.1 Year Books, Almanacs, Directories, Handbooks | 53 |
| | 5.4.2 Evaluations of Reference Sources | 53 |
| | 5.4.3 Guides to Reference Books | 53 |
| 5.5 | Information Source | 54 |
| | 5.5.1 Introduction | 54 |
| | 5.5.2 Meaning and Scope | 55 |
| 5.6 | Characterisation of Information Sources | 55 |
| 5.7 | Need and Purpose | 55 |
| 5.8 | Types of Information Sources | 55 |
| 5.9 | Primary Sources | 56 |
| | 5.9.1 Proceedings of Conferences/Seminars/Symposia | 57 |
| | 5.9.2 Standards and Its Types | 58 |
| | 5.9.3 Patents | 59 |
| | 5.9.4 Reports of Scientific Expeditions | 60 |
| | 5.9.5 Research Reports & Feasibility Report | 60 |
| | 5.9.6 Thesis and Dissertations | 60 |
| | 5.9.7 Case Studies | 71 |
| | 5.9.8 Official Publications | 61 |
| 5.10 | Secondary Sources | 61 |
| | 5.10.1 Secondary Journals | 61 |
| | 5.10.2 Abstracting Journals | 61/ |
| | 5.10.1 Secondary Journals 5.10.2 Abstracting Journals 5.10.2.1 Development of Abstracting 5.10.2.2 Evaluation of Abstracting Journals REGIS | 6/2 Tæa |
| id DE) sity | 5.10.2.3 Chemical Abstract (CA) Tirupati TIRUI | _U4_ |
| | | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDGE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 5.10.2.4 Biological Abstracts (BA) | 64 | |
|----------|---|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| | 5.10.2.5 Library and Information Science Abs | stract (LISA) 64 | |
| | 5.10.2.6 Indian Science Abstract (ISA) | 64 | |
| | 5.10.2.7 International Pharmaceutical Abstract | et (IPA) 65 | |
| | 5.10.2.8 Indian Dissertation Abstracts (IDA) | 65 | |
| | 5.10.2.9 Indexing Journals | 66 | |
| | 5.10.2.10 INIS Atom Index | 67 | |
| | 5.10.2.11 Agrindex | 67 | |
| | 5.10.2.12 Index MEDICUS | 68 | |
| | 5.10.2.13 Engineering Index | 68 | |
| | 5.10.2.14 Science Citation Index (SCI) | 69 | |
| | 5.10.2.15 Humanities Index (HI) | 69 | |
| 5.11 | Tertiary sources | 70 | |
| | 5.11.1 Bibliographies of Bibliographies | 70 | |
| | 5.11.2 Retrospective Bibliographies of Bibliographies | 70 | |
| | 5.11.3 Current Bibliographies of Bibliographies | 70 | |
| | 5.11.4 Union Lists Of Periodicals | 71 | |
| | 5.11.5 Guides to Reference Books | 72 | |
| 5.12 | Self check Exercises | 73 | |
| 5.13 | Model Questions | 73 | |
| 5.14 | Suggested Readings | 74 | |
| | UNIT - VI | | |
| 6. B | SIBLIOGRAPHY ITS TYPES | | |
| 6.0 | Aims & Objectives | 75 | |
| 6.1 | Introduction | 75 | |
| 6.2 | Development of Bibliography | 76 | |
| 6.3 | Definitions | 77 | |
| 6.4 | Need and Functions | 79 | |
| 6.5 | Types of Bibliography | 80 | |
| | 6.5.1 Systematic or Enumerative Bibliography | 81 | |
| | 6.5.2 Analytical or Critical Bibliography | 81 | |
| | 6.5.3 Descriptive Bibliography | 82 | |
| | 6.5.4 Textual Bibliography | 82 | |
| | 6.5.5 Historical Bibliography | 83 | |
| 6.6 | Summary | 83 | |
| 6.7 | Self Check Exercises | oce and 83 | 111 |
| 6.8 | Model Questions | S.V. University 84 | MAL |
| Centre f | Reorganisted Readings or Distance and ducation (CDCC) | \ Tirupati | REGISTRAR V. UNIVERSIT TIRUPATL |
| | teswara University PATI - 517 502. | Tirupati | TINOTALL |

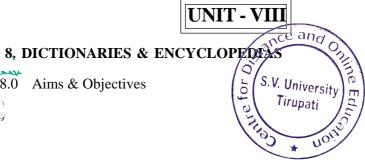
UNIT - VII

7. PREPARATION OF BIBLIOGRAPHIES

| 7.0 | Aims & Objectives | 85 |
|------|---|----|
| 7.1 | Introduction | 86 |
| 7.2 | Defintiion, Function and Importance of Bibliography | 86 |
| | 7.2.1 Need and Functions | 88 |
| 7.3 | Preparation of Bibliographies | 89 |
| | 7.3.1 By Purpose of Compiler | 89 |
| | 7.3.2 By Language | 90 |
| | 7.3.3 By Mode of Compilation | 90 |
| 7.4 | Primary Bibliographies | 90 |
| 7.5 | Secondary Bibliographies | 90 |
| | 7.5.1 By Space of Geographical Area | 90 |
| | 7.5.2 By Time | 91 |
| 7.6 | General and Special Types of Bibliographies | 91 |
| | 7.6.1 Comprehensive Bibliography | 91 |
| | 7.6.2 Selective Bibliography | 92 |
| | 7.6.3 Brances of Bibliography | 92 |
| 7.7 | Compilation of Bibliography | 94 |
| | 7.7.1 Planning | 95 |
| | 7.7.2 Preparation | 96 |
| 7.8 | Revision and Comulation | 97 |
| 7.9 | Summary | 97 |
| 7.10 | Self Check Exercises | 98 |
| 7.11 | Model Questions | 98 |
| 7.12 | Suggested Reading | 98 |

UNIT - VIII

DIRECTOR 8.0 Aims & Objectives
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





| | 8.1 | Introduction | 100 |
|---|------------------|--|---|
| | 8.2 | Meaning and Definitions | 100 |
| | 8.3 | Types of Dictionaries | 101 |
| | | 8.3.1 General Dictionaries | 102 |
| | | 8.3.2 Un-Abridged Multi-Volumed Dictionary for | Adults 103 |
| | | 8.3 3.Oxford English Dictionary | 103 |
| | | 8.3.4 Punctuation Dictionaries | 104 |
| | | 8.3.5 Spelling Dictionaries | 104 |
| | | 8.3.6 Dictionaries of Synonyms and Antonyms | 104 |
| | | 8.3.7 Dictionaries Covering Special Type or Clar | ss of Words 105 |
| | | 8.3.8 Dictionary of New Words | 105 |
| | | 8.3.9 Dictionary of Obsolete Words | 105 |
| | | 8.3.10 Dictionaries of Abbreviations and Acrony | ms 105 |
| | | 8.3.11 Dictionary of Signs and Symbols | 105 |
| | | 8.3 .12 Dictionaries of Crossword Puzzles | 105 |
| | | 8.3.13 Dictionary of Rhyming Words | 105 |
| | | 8.3.14 Dictionarary of Folktales | 105 |
| | | 8.3.15 Dictionary of Nursery Rhymes | 106 |
| | | 8.3.16 Dictionary of Characters | 106 |
| | | 8.3.17 Dictionaries of Quotations | 106 |
| | | 8.3.18 Dictionaries of Proverbs | 106 |
| | 8.4 | Uses of Dictionaries | 106 |
| | | 8.4.1 General Dictionaries | 106 |
| | | 8.4.2 Subject Dictionaries | 106 |
| | | 8.4.3 Translating Dictionaries | 107 |
| | 8.5 | Encyclopedias | 107 |
| | | 8.5.1 History of Encyclopedias | 107 |
| | | 8.5.2 Meaning | 109 |
| | | 8.5.3 Definition | 109 |
| 9 | DII Centre fo | RECTOR CONTROL OF Encyclopedias | 109 109 REGISTRAR 108.V. University Tirupati TIPUPATI |
| | i Venkat | eswara University ATI - 517 502. | TIRUPATL |
| | | | 5 7 1 = 11 15 Z |

| | 8.5.6 General Encyclopedias | 109 |
|-------|--|----------------------|
| | 8.5.7 Special or Subject Encyclopedias | 111 |
| | 8.5.8 Uses of Encyclopedias | 111 |
| 8.6. | Summary | 111 |
| 8.7 | Self Checkup Exercises | 112 |
| 8.8 | Model Questions | 112 |
| 8.9 | Suggested Readings | 112 |
| | UNIT - IX | |
| 9. 1 | BIBLIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION SOURCES | |
| 9.0 | Aims & Objectives | 113 |
| 9.1 | Introduction | 113 |
| 9.2 | Types of Bibliographies | 114 |
| | 9.2.1 National Bibliographies | 115 |
| | 9.2.2 Subject Bibliographies | 116 |
| | 9.2.3 Trade Bibliographies | 116 |
| 9.3 | Summary | 117 |
| 9.4 | Self Check Exercises | 117 |
| 9.5 | Model Questions | 118 |
| 9.6 | Suggested Readings | 118 |
| | UNIT - X | |
| 10. (| GEOGRAPHICAL & BIBLIOGRAPHI CAL INFORMATION | |
| | SOURCES | |
| 10.0 | Aims & Objectives | 119 |
| 10.1 | Introduction | 119 |
| 10.2 | Geographical Sources-Its Types | 120 |
| | 10.2.1 Gazetteers | 120 |
| | 10.2.2 Atlases, Maps and Globes | 121 |
| | 10.2.2 Atlases, Maps and Globes 10.2.3 Travel Guides | / <u>/21</u> TRAR |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and 10.3
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



| | 10.3.1 General or Universal | 122 |
|------|-------------------------------|-----|
| | 10.3.2 National or Local | 122 |
| | 10.3.3 Specialised or Subject | 123 |
| 10.4 | Summary | 123 |
| 10.5 | Self Check Exercises | 123 |
| 10.6 | Model Questions | 123 |
| 10.7 | Suggested Ready | 124 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



REGISTRAR 8.V. UNIVERSITY TIRUPATL

Notes

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



REGISTRAR 8.V. UNIVERSITY TIRUPATL

LIBRARY CLASSIFICATION THEORY

PAPER - III

- By

Dr. B. Veena Kumari Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDCC) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. Tirupathi, AP -51

REGISTRAR

8.V. UNIVERSITY

TIRLIPATI

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education/

Sri Venkateswara UniversityREGISTRAR
Tirupathi AFira 17 502 8.V. UNIVERSITY
TIRUPATI

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC:)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

UNIT - I

| 1. | MEANING AND PURPOSE OF CLASS | SIFICATION Page N | lo. |
|--|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1.0 | Aims and Objectives | 1 | |
| 1.1 | Introduction | 1 | |
| 1.2 | What of Classification? | 2 | |
| 1.3 | Meaning of Classification | 2 | |
| | 1.3.1 First Sense | 3 | |
| | 1.3.2 Second Senses | 3 | |
| | 1.3.3 Third Sense | 3 | |
| | 1.3.4 Fourth Sense | 3 | |
| | 1.3.5 Fifth Sense | 4 | |
| 1.4 | Library Classification | 4 | |
| 1.5 | Definitions of Library Classification | 4 | |
| 1.6 | Need and Purpose Library Classification | 6 | |
| 1.7 | Summary | 7 | |
| 1.8 | Key Words | 8 | |
| 1.9 | Self Check Exercises | 8 | |
| 1.10 | Model Questions | 8 | |
| | UNIT - II | | |
| 2. | TERMINOLOGY | | |
| 2.0 | Aims and Objectives | 9 | |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 10 | |
| 2.2 | Classification Seheme | 11 | |
| 2.3 | Analytic synthetic classification | 11 | |
| | 2.3.1 Book classification | 11 | |
| | 2.3.2 Depth classification | 11 | |
| | 2.3.3Universal Classification | 11 | |
| 2.4 | Isolate | 12 | |
| | 2.4.1 Compound Isolate | 12 | |
| | 2.4.2 Isolate Idea | 13 | |
| | 2.4.3 Basic subject idea | 13 | |
| | 2.4.4 Speciator Idea | 13 | |
| | 2.4.5 Combination of Ideas | 13 | |
| 2.5 | Macro Subject | 13 | |
| 2.6 | Micro subject | 13 | |
| 2.7 | Subjects | 18 | |
| | 2.7.1 Specific subject | ance and 18 | MA |
| \sim | 2.7.2 Basic Subject | 18 18 18 18 18 18 | |
| | 2.7.5 Shipie Budjeet | o S.V. University | REGISTRAR 8.V. UNIVERSIT |
| Online Education Sri Venkateswara L TIRUPATI - 517 | | Tirupati 219 | TIRUPATL |
| IINOFAIT - ST | | 199 HOUSE | |

| | 2.7.5 Complex Subject | 20 |) |
|---|--|-------------------------------|-----|
| 2.8 | Fission | 20 |) |
| 2.9 | Non-primary basic subjects | 21 | 1 |
| | UNIT - I | $\overline{\mathbf{n}}$ | |
| 3. N | ORMATIVE PRINCIPLES | | |
| 3.0 | Aims and Objectives | 25 | 5 |
| 3.1 | Introduction | 25 | 5 |
| 3.2 | Ranganathan's Basic Laws | 26 | 5 |
| | 3.2.1 Laws of Interpretation | 27 | 7 |
| | 3.2.2 Law of Impartiality | 28 | 3 |
| | 3.2.3 Law of Symmetry | 28 | 3 |
| | 3.2.4 Law of Parsimony | 29 | • |
| | 3.2.5 Law of Local Variation | 29 |) |
| | 3.2.6 Law of Osmosis | 31 | 1 |
| 3.3 | Self Check Exercises | 32 | 2 |
| 3.4 | Model Questions | 32 | 2 |
| | UNIT - I | $\overline{\mathbf{V}}$ | |
| 4. S | TRUCTURE AND DEVELOPMENT O | DF SUBJCETS | |
| 4.0 | Aims and Objectives | 34 | 1 |
| 4 1 | Introduction | 34 | 1 |
| 4.2 | Formation of Subjects | 34 | 1 |
| | 4.2.1 Loose Assemblage | 35 | 5 |
| | 4.2.2 Loose Assemblage 1 | 35 | 5 |
| | 4.2.3 Loose Assemblage 2 | 36 | 5 |
| | 4.2.4 Loose Assemblage 3 | 37 | 7 |
| 4.3 | Fission | 38 | 3 |
| | 4.3.1 Fission of Basic Subjects | 38 | 3 |
| | 4.3.2 Fission of Isolate Ideas | 38 | 3 |
| | 4.3.3 Dissection | 38 | 3 |
| | 4.3.4 Denudation | 38 | 3 |
| 4.4 | Fusion | 39 | • |
| 4.5 | Distillation | 39 |) |
| 4.6 | Agglomeration | 39 |) |
| 4.7 | Cluster | 40 |) |
| 4.8 | Stages of Development of Interdisciplinary | Subjects 40 |) |
| | 4.8.1 Structure | 41 | Ĺ |
| | 4.8.2 Dichotomy | 41 | Ĺ |
| | 4.8.3 Living Organisms | 41 | L |
| 4.9 | Decachotomy | University REGISTR | 1 |
| 5() | Polychotomy | | AD |
| DIRECTOR 4.11 Centre for Distance and | | SUIT CISITY I THE SALE LINIVE | RSI |
| Online Education (CDCC) Sri Venkateswara University | | TIRUPAT | |
| TIRUPATI - 517 502. | 175 | | |

| 4.12 | Summary | 43 |
|-------------|--|-----------|
| 4.13 | Self Check Exercises | 43 |
| 4.14 | Model Questions | 43 |
| 4.15 | Suggested Readings | 43 |
| | UNIT - V | |
| - 0 | | |
| | SPECIES OF CLASSIFICATION SCHEMES | 4.5 |
| 5.0 | Aims and Objectives Introduction | 45 45 |
| 5.1 | | 45 |
| 5.2 | Purely Enumerative Classification 5.2.1 Library of Congress Classification (LC) | _ |
| | 5.2.1 Library of Congress Classification (LC) | 46 |
| <i>5</i> 2 | 5.2.2 Rider's International Classification (RIC) | 46 |
| 5.3 | Almost Enumerative Classification | 46 |
| | 5.3.1 Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) | 47 |
| ~ . | 5.3.2 Subject Classification | 47 |
| 5.4 | Almost Faceted Classification | 47 |
| | 5.4.1 Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) | 47 |
| | 5.4.2 Bibliographic Classification | 47 |
| 5.5 | Rigidly Faceted Classification | 48 |
| 5.6 | Almost Freely Faceted Classification | 48 |
| 5.7 | Freely Faceted Classification | 48 |
| 5.8 | Summary | 49 |
| 5.9 | Self Check Exercises | 49 |
| | Model Questions | 49 |
| 5.11 | Suggested Readings | 50 |
| | UNIT - VI | |
| 6. C | LASSIFIATION SCHEMES | |
| 6.0 | Aims and Objectives | 51 |
| 6.1 | Introduction | 52 |
| 6.2 | Dewey Decimal Classification (Edition 19) | 52 |
| | 6.2.1 DDC – Its Editions | 53 |
| | 6.2.2 DDC and Relative Index - 19th Edition | 54 |
| | 6.2.3 Characteristics of 19th edition | 54 |
| | 6.2.4 Structure of DDC (19th Edition) | 55 |
| | 6.2.5 Volume - 1 : Introduction and Tables | 55 |
| | 6.2.6 Volume - 2 Schedules (000 to 999) | 58 |
| | 6.2.7 Volume - 3 : Index | 62 |
| | 6.2.8 DDC – 20 Edition (1989) | 62 |
| | 6.2.9 DDC – 22 Edition (2003) | 62 |
| 6.3 | Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) ce and | 63/ |
| • | 6.3.1 Principle: The Principle underlying the ODC are | 17 6/3 |
| | 6.3.2 Special Auxiliaries (3.2 Grand Auxiliaries (3.7 University) | REGISTRAF |
| id D€) | 6.3.3 Common Auxiliaries (50 S.v. University) | TIRHPATI |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 6.3.4 Notation | 65 |
|------|---|----------|
| | 6.3.5 Index | 65 |
| 6.4 | Colon Classification (CC) | 65 |
| | 6.4.1 Basic Principles in Colon Classification | 66 |
| | 6.4.2 Features of Colon Classification | 67 |
| 6.5 | Summary | 70 |
| 6.6 | Self Check Exercises | 71 |
| 6.7 | Model Questions | 72 |
| 6.8 | Suggested Readings | 72 |
| | UNIT - VII | |
| 7. | PRINCIPLES OF FACETS SEQUENCES, COMMON | ISOLATES |
| - | AND PHASE RELATIONS | |
| 7.0 | Aims and Objectives | 73 |
| 7.1 | Introduction | 74 |
| 7.2 | • | 74 |
| | 7.2.1 Postulate of First Facet | 74 |
| | 7.2.2 Postulate of Concreteness | 74 |
| | 7.2.3 Postulate of Face Sequence within a Round | 74 |
| | 7.2.4 Postulate of Facet sequence within the last Round | 75 |
| 7.3 | Postulate of Level Cluster | 76 |
| 7.4 | Principle for Facet Sequence | 77 |
| | 7.4.1 Wall-Picture Principle | 77 |
| | 7.4.2 Whole-Organ Principle | 77 |
| | 7.4.3 Cow-Calf Principle | 77 |
| | 7.4.4 Actand-Action-Actor-Tool Principle | 78 |
| | 7.4.5 Classification is Trnanlation | 78 |
| 7.5 | Common Isolates | 91 |
| 7.6 | Phase Relations | 92 |
| | 7.6.1 General Phase Relations | 92 |
| | 7.6.2 Bias Phase Relations | 92 |
| | 7.6.3 Comparasion Phase Relations | 92 |
| | 7.6.4 Defferentiate Phase Relations | 92 |
| | 7.6.5 Influencing phase Relations | 93 |
| 7.7 | Summary | 97 |
| 7.8 | Self Check Exercises | 97 |
| 7.9 | Model Questions | 98 |
| 7.10 | Suggested Readings | 98 |
| | TINITE VITT | |

UNIT - VIII

8. POSTULATES FUNDAMENTAL CATERGORIES

8.0 Aims and Objectives

Introduction

DIRECTOR 8.1

Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOC)

Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





| | 8.2 | Postulation Approach to Colon Classification (CC) | 100 |
|---|-----------|--|-------------------|
| | 8.3 | Utility of Postulational Aporoach | 100 |
| | 8.4 | Facet Analysis | 100 |
| | 8.5 | Fundamental Categories | 101 |
| | | 8.5.1 Time Category | 102 |
| | | 8.5.2 Space Category | 102 |
| | | 8.5.3 Matter Category | 102 |
| | | 8.5.4 Personality Category | 103 |
| | 8.6 | Postulates of Basic Facet | 103 |
| | 8.7 | Postulate of Ioslate Facet | 104 |
| | 8.8 | Consolidated Postulate about Subject | 104 |
| | 8.9 | Self Check Exercises | 105 |
| | 8.10 | Model Questions | 105 |
| | 8.11 | Suggested Readings | 105 |
| | | UNIT - IX | |
| | 9. F | ACET ANALYSIS PHASE ANALYSIS ROUNDS AND LEVELS | |
| | 9.0 | Aims and Objectives | 108 |
| | 9.1 | Introduction | 108 |
| | 9.2 | States of Facet Analysis | 108 |
| | | 9.2.1 Creation of Facets | 109 |
| | | 9.2.2 Literature (MC) | 109 |
| | 9.3 | Arrangement of Foci | 110 |
| | | 9.3.1 Principle of Later-in-time | 110 |
| | | 9.3.2 Principle of Later-in-Evolution | 110 |
| | | 9.3.3 Principles of Spatial Continuity | 110 |
| | | 9.3.4 Principles of Quantitative Measurement | 111 |
| | | 9.3.5 Principle of Increasing Complexity | 111 |
| | | 9.3.6 Principle of Canonical Sequence | 111 |
| | | 9.3.7 Principles of Literary Warrant | 111 |
| | | 9.3.8 Principle of Alphabetical Sequence | 112 |
| | 9.4 | Advantages of Facet Analysis | 112 |
| | 9.5 | Postulate of Rounds and Levels | 112 |
| | 9.6 | Postulate of Rounds for Personality and Matter | 112 |
| | 9.7 | Postulate of Rounds for Space and Time | 113 |
| | 9.8 | Postulates of Levels for Personality and Matter | 113 |
| | 9.9 | Postulate of Levels for Space and Time | 114 |
| | 9.10 | Postulate of Levels for Energy | 114 |
| | 9.11 | Postulates for Facet Sequence | 115 |
| | 9.12 | Postulate of Concreteness Postulate of Facet Sequence with a Round Postulate of Facet Sequence within the last Round | 115 |
| | 9.13 | Postulate of Facet Sequence with a Round Postulate of Facet Sequence within the last Round S.V. University | 115 M// |
| | 9.14 | Postulate of Facet Sequence within the last Round | 115 REGISTRAR |
| | Centre fo | Postulate of a Level Cluster | 118.V. UNIVERSITY |
| | | lucation (CDCs) | TIRUPATL |
| Ì | | aswara University ATI - 517 502. | |
| | | * 100 | |

| 9.16 | Postulate for National Plane | 116 |
|-------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| 9.17 | Summary | 116 |
| 9.18 | Self Check Exercises | 121 |
| 9.19 | Model Questions | 121 |
| 9.20 | Suggested Readings | 122 |
| | UNIT - X | |
| | | |
| | DEVICES | |
| | Aims and Objectives | 123 |
| | Introduction | 123 |
| | Types of Devices | 124 |
| | 10.2.1 Chronological Device (CD) | 124 |
| | 10.2.2 Geographical Device (GD) | 126 |
| | 10.2.3 Subject Device (SD) | 126 |
| | 10.2.4 Alphabetical Device (AD) | 128 |
| | 10.2.5 Mnemonic Device (MD) | 129 |
| | 10.2.6 Facet Device (FD) | 130 |
| | 10.2.7 Super Imposition Device (SID) | 130 |
| | 10.2.8 Classic Device (CD) | 132 |
| | 10.2.9 Gap Device | 132 |
| | 10.2.10 Other Devices | 133 |
| 10.3 | Advantages | 137 |
| | Summary | 138 |
| 10.5 | Self Check Exercises | 138 |
| 10.6 | Model Questions | 138 |
| 10.7 | Suggested Readings | 138 |
| | UNIT - XI | |
| 11. C | ANNON FOR CLASSIFICATION | |
| 11.0 | Aims and Objectives | 139 |
| 11.1 | Introduction | 139 |
| 11.2 | Idea Plane | 140 |
| 11.3 | Verbal Plane | 140 |
| 11.4 | Notational Plane | 141 |
| 11.5 | Advantages | 141 |
| 11.6 | Chart of Equivalent Terms | 142 |
| 11.7 | Summary | 142 |
| 11.8 | Self Check Exercises | 142 |
| 11.9 | Model Questions | 143 |
| 11.10 | Suggested Readings | 143 |
| | UNIT-XNE and | MAL |
| 13. N | TOTATION NEED TYPES AND PUNCTIONS | DECISTOR |
| | | REGISIRAR |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and 12.0 Aims and Objectives
Online Education (CDOE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

REGISTRAR 8.V. UNIVERSIT TIRUPATI

| 12. | .1 Introduction | 145 |
|---------|---|------------------------|
| 12. | .2 Definition of Notation | 146 |
| 12. | .3 Purpose of Notation in Classification | 146 |
| | .4 Advantages of Notation | 147 |
| | .5 Functions of Notation | 147 |
| 12. | .6 Types of Notation | 147 |
| | .7 Quality of Notation | 148 |
| | .8 Canons for Notation | 149 |
| | .9 Summary | 153 |
| | .10 Self Check Exercises | 153 |
| 12. | .11 Model Questions | 154 |
| 12. | .12 Suggested Readings | 154 |
| | UNIT - XIII | |
| 13 | 3. CALL NUMBER CLASS NUMBER BOOK NUMBER COLLECTION NUMBER | |
| 13 | .0 Aims and Objectives | 156 |
| | .1 Introduction | 156 |
| | .2 Call Number | 156 |
| 13. | 13.2.1 Definition of Call Number | 156 |
| | 13.2.2 Utility of Call Number | 157 |
| | 13.2.3 Structure of Call Number | 157 |
| | 13.2.4 Writing Call Number | 158 |
| | 13.2.5 Method of writing Call Number | 158 |
| 13 | .3 Class Number | 158 |
| | .4 Book Number | 159 |
| 13. | 13.4.1 Canon of Book Number | 159 |
| | 13.4.2 Evolution of book number | 159 |
| | 13.4.3 Description of Book Number Facet | 165 |
| 13 | .5 Collection Number | 172 |
| 13. | 13.5.1 Need for Collection Number | 172 |
| | 13.5.2 Nature of Documents | 172 |
| | 13.5.3 Structure of Library | 172 |
| | 13.5.4 Special Requirements of Users of Libraries | 172 |
| | 13.5.5 Categorisation of Collections | 173 |
| | 13.5.6 Meaning of Collection Number | 173 |
| | 13.5.7 Canon of Collection Number | 173 |
| | 13.5.8 How of collection Number in CC | 173 |
| 13 | .6 Summary | 174 |
| | 7 Calf Charle Evenings | 174 |
| | .8 Model Questions | 174 |
| | 9 Suggested Readings | 174 MM |
| _ | 50 | 174 174 REGISTRAR |
| Centr | o for Pictoria and | sity 8.V. UNIVERSIT/ |
| Sri Ven | e Education (CDCs) | TIRUPATL |
| TIR | kateswara University RUPATI - 517 502. | OTE TIMOT AIR |
| | * 0 | |

Bachelor of Library and Information Science (B.L.I.Sc)

PAPER -III: LIBRARY CLASSIFICATION THEORY

- 1. Meaning and purpose of classification
- 2. Terminology
- 3. Normative Principles
- 4. Structure and development of subjects
- 5. Spacious of Classification schemes
- 6. Classification Schemes: Brief study of Major general schemes
- General theory of classification: Main class, Canonical Class Basic Class,
 Isolate. Common Isolate, Special Isolate, Postulates Fundamental categories,
 Principles of facts sequences, Helpful sequence, Facet analysis and phase
 analysis.
- 8. Deices to form facet in array of classed: Chronological device (CID) Geographical Device (GD), Subject device (SD), Alphabetical Device (AD), Mnemonic Device (MND), Facet Device (FD), super Imposition Device (SIX), Classic Device (CLD), Telescoping of array and in facet. Sector device, GAP device, Decimal
- 9. Cannon for classification (Idea Verbal & & Notational Place)
- 10. Notation: Types, structure, Quality, Value
- 11. Call Number: Class No. Book No. and collection No.

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

REGISTRAR
B.V. UNIVERSITY
TIRUPATL

LIBRARY CLASSIFICATION PRACTICE

PAPER - IV

- **Bv**

Dr. B. Veena Kumari

Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara Um DIRECTOR

Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDO2) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -5175

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

Tirupathi AP 454shy 50

TIRUPATL

DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC() Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

UNIT - I

Page No. 1. INTRODUCTION TO DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION 1.0 Aims and Objectives 4 1.1 Introduction 4 1.2 Melvil Dewey (1851 -1931) 4 Editions of DDC 5 1.3 1.4 Features of DDC 6 1.4.1 Characteristics of DDC 6 1.4.2 7 Minute division 1.4.3 **Decimal Notations** 7 1.4.4 Integrity of members 7 1.4.5 7 Mnemonics 1.4.6 Relative Location 8 **Process of Division** 8 1.5 1.5.1 Main Classes 8 1.5.2 **Divisions** 8 1.5.3 9 Sections 9 **Auxiliary Tables** 1.6 11 1.6.1 Table 1- Standard Sub-Divisions 1.6.2 Table 2 - Geographic Areas 11 12 1.6.3 Table 3 - Sub -divisions for individuals literatures 1.6.4 Table 4 - Sub -divisions for individuals languages 12 1.6.5 12 Table 5 - Racial, Ethnic, National groups (r.e.n.) 1.6.6 Table 6 - languages 13 1.6.7 Table 7 - Groups of Person 13 14 1.7 Summary 1.8 Key Words 14 1.9 Self Check Exercises 15 1.10 Model Questions 15 1.11 Suggested Readings 15

UNIT - II

2. SAILENT FEATURES OF DDC - 20

Aims and Objectives 2.0

Introduction

Centre for Distance ajectives of DDC-200 Online Education (CDC)

Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.





| 2.3 | Physic | al Format | | 20 |
|-------------|---------|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| | 2.3.1 | Volume-1 | | 20 |
| | 2.3.2 | Volumes 2 and 3 | | 21 |
| | 2.3.3 | Volume 4 | | 21 |
| 2.4 | Import | ant Features | | 21 |
| | 2.4.1 | Manual | | 21 |
| | 2.4.2 | General Format | | 21 |
| | 2.4.3 | Revised Schedules | | 22 |
| | 2.4.4 | Relative Index | | 22 |
| | 2.4.5 | Featurs of the Schedules | and Tables | 22 |
| | 2.4.6 | Summaries | | 22 |
| 2.5 | Summ | aries of the Schedules | | 22 |
| | 2.5.1 | Single level Summaries | | 22 |
| | 2.5.2 | Multi level Summaries | | 23 |
| 2.6 | Notes | | | 23 |
| | 2.6.1 | Including notes | | 23 |
| | 2.6.2 | Contains notes | | 23 |
| | 2.6.3 | Common name notes | | 24 |
| 2.7 | Revisi | on Notes | | 25 |
| | 2.7.1 | Class Elsewhere Notes | | 25 |
| | 2.7.2 | Discontinued Notes | | 25 |
| | 2.7.3 | Relocation Notes | | 25 |
| | 2.7.4 | OptionNotes | | 25 |
| 2.8 | Struct | ure of an Entry | | 25 |
| 2.9 | Summ | ary | | 26 |
| 2.10 | Key w | rords | | 26 |
| 2.11 | Self C | heck Exercises | | 27 |
| 2.12 | Model | Questions | | 27 |
| 2.13 | Sugge | sted Readings | | 27 |
| | | U | NIT - III | |
| 3. I | NUMBI | ER BUILDING | | |
| 3.0 | Aims | and Objectives | | 31 |
| 3.1 | Introdu | action | | 31 |
| 3.2 | Addin | g from Table-1 | | 32 |
| 3.3 | Addin | g fromTables 2 - 7 | | 32 |
| 3.4 | Citatio | on Order | ance and | 1 1 1 36/ |
| 3.5 | Preced | lence Order | S.V. University | 17/3/26 |
| 3.6 | Relati | ve Index (Volume - 4) | O Timbersity I am | REGISTRAL 8.V. UNIVERS |
| OE) | | | Tirupati | TIRUPATL |

DIRECTOR 3.
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 3.7 | Arrangement | 37 |
|------|---|----|
| 3.8 | Terms included | 38 |
| 3.9 | Options | 38 |
| 3.10 | Alphabetical and Chronological Arrangements | 38 |
| 3.11 | Summary | 38 |
| 3.12 | Key words | 38 |
| 3.13 | Self Check Exercises | 39 |
| 3.14 | Model Questions | 39 |
| 3.15 | Suggested Readings | 39 |
| | UNIT - IV | |
| 4. U | INIVERSE OF KNOWLEDGE | |
| 4.0 | Aims and Objectives | 43 |
| 4.1 | Introduction | 43 |
| 4.2 | First Summary | 43 |
| 4.3 | Secondary Summary | 44 |
| 4.4 | Third Summary | 46 |
| 4.5 | Summary | 69 |
| 4.6 | Self Check Exercises | 70 |
| 4.7 | Model Questions | 70 |
| 4.8 | Suggested Readings | 70 |
| | UNIT - V | |
| 5. 8 | SUBJECT FORMULATION | |
| 5.0 | Aims and Objectives | 73 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 73 |
| 5.2 | Title of the Book | 73 |
| 5.3 | Fly Leaves of the Book Jacket | 74 |
| 5.4 | Assigning Class Number | 74 |
| 5.5 | Summary | 74 |
| 5.6 | Self Check Exercises | 75 |
| 5.7 | Model Questions | 75 |
| 5.8 | Suggested Readings | 75 |
| | UNIT - VI | |

6. USE OF SCHEDULES INDEX AND TABLES

6.0 Aims and Objectives

6.1 Introduction

Self Check Exercises

DIRECTOR 6.2
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





| 6.3 | Model Questions | 83 | 1 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 6.4 | Suggested Readings | 81 | 1 |
| | | UNIT - VII | |
| | | | |
| 7. AU | UXILIARY TABLE ST | TANDARD SUB DIVISION | |
| 7.0 | Aims and objectives | 85 | 5 |
| 7.1 | Introduction | 85 | 5 |
| 7.2 | Table 1 Standard Sub Div | vision 85 | 5 |
| 7.3 | Model Questions | 87 | 7 |
| 7.4 | Suggested Readings | 87 | 7 |
| | | UNIT - VIII | |
| 8. | AUXILIARY TABLE G | EOGRAPHICAL AREAS | |
| 8.0 | Aims and objectives | 91 | 1 |
| 8.1 | Introduction | 93 | 1 |
| 8.2 | Model Questions | 93 | 3 |
| | | UNIT - IX | |
| | AUXILIARY TABLE SU LANGUAGES | UB DIVISIONS OF INDIVIDUAL LANGUES | & |
| 9.0 | Aims and objectives | 97 | 7 |
| 9.1 | Introduction | 97 | 7 |
| 9.2 | Model Questions | 99 | 9 |
| | | UNIT - X | |
| 10. | | SUB DIVISIONS OF RACIAL, NATIONAL & GROUP OF PERSONS | |
| 10.0 | Aims and objectives | 10 | 03 |
| 10.1 | Introduction | 10 | 03 |
| 10.2 | Model Questions | 10 | 06 |
| | | UNIT - XI | |
| 11. <i>A</i> | ASSIGNED NUMBER | BUILDING | |
| 11.0 | Aims and objectives | 10 | 09 |
| 11.1 | Introduction | 10 | 09 |
| | | UNIT - XII | |
| 12. (| COLON CLASSIFICA | TION Once and | <u>/-</u> |

12.0 Aims and Objectives

12.1 Introduction

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and 12.2
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.
Introduction
Ranganathan's Works





| 12.3 Division of Universe of Knowledge | 126 |
|--|--|
| 12.4 Main classes | 127 |
| 12.5 Facet Analysis and Fundamental Categories | 127 |
| 12.6 Fundamental Categories | 128 |
| 12.6.1 Time | 128 |
| 12.6.2 Space | 129 |
| 12.6.3 Energy | 129 |
| 12.6.4 Matter | 130 |
| 12.6.5. Personality | 130 |
| 12.7 Rounds and Levels in colon classification | 131 |
| 12.8 Postulates Of Rounds For Energy | 131 |
| 12.9 Rounds for personality and Matter | 131 |
| 12.10 Rounds for space and Time | 132 |
| 12.11 Levels | 132 |
| 12.12 Levels of Personality | 133 |
| 12.13 Summary | 135 |
| 12.14 Suggested Readings | 135 |
| UNIT - XIII | |
| 13. COMMON, SPACE AND TIME ISOLATES | S |
| 13.0 Aims and Objectives | 139 |
| 13.1 Introduction | 139 |
| 13.2 Anterioring Common Isolates (ACI) | 140 |
| 13.3 Posteriorising Common Isolates (PCI) | 143 |
| 13.4 Summary | 144 |
| 13.5 Self Check Exercises | 145 |
| 13.6 Model Questions | 145 |
| 13.7 Suggested Readings | 145 |
| UNIT - XIV | |
| 14. DEVICES | |
| 14.0 Aims and Objectives | 149 |
| 14.1 Introduction | 149 |
| 14.2 Types of Device | 149 |
| 14.2.1 Chronological Device (CD) | 150 |
| 14.2.2 Geographical Device (GD) | 150 |
| 14.2.3 Subject Device (SD) | 151 152 152 REGISTRAR |
| 14.2.4 Mnemonic Device (MD) | 152 REGISTRAR |
| Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC) Upper Imposition Device (SID) Srl Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. | S.V. University Tirupati Tirupati Tirupati Tirupati Tirupati |
| | * non |

| 14.3 | Summary | 153 |
|-----------|--|----------------|
| 14.4 | Self Check Exercises | 153 |
| 14.5 | Model Questions | 153 |
| 14.6 | Suggested Readings | 154 |
| | UNIT - XV | |
| | | |
| 15. I | PHASE RELATIONS | |
| | Aims and Objectives | 157 |
| 15.1 | Introduction | 158 |
| 15.2 | Types of Phase Relations | 158 |
| | 15.2.1 Phase Relation (Inter-Subject Phase Relation) | 159 |
| | 15.2.2 Bias Phase Relation | 159 |
| | 15.2.3 Comparison Phase Relation | 159 |
| | 15.2.4 Difference Phase Relation | 160 |
| | 15.2.5 Influence Phase Relation | 160 |
| 15.3 | Intra Facet Phase Relation | 160 |
| | 15.3.1 General | 160 |
| | 15.3.2 Bias Relation | 160 |
| | 15.3.3 Comparison Relation | 161 |
| | 15.3.4 Difference Relation | 161 |
| | 15.3.5 Influence Relation | 161 |
| 15.4 | Intra- Array Phase Relation | 162 |
| | 15.4.1 General | 162 |
| | 15.4.2 Bias Relation | 162 |
| | 15.4.3 Comparison Relation | 162 |
| | 15.4.4 Difference Relation | 162 |
| | 15.4.5 Influencing Relation | 163 |
| 15.5 | Summary | 163 |
| 15.6 | Self Check Exercises | 163 |
| 15.7 | Model Questions | 163 |
| | UNIT - XVI | |
| 16. 8 | SYSTEMS AND SPECIALS | |
| 16.0 | Aims and Objectives | 167 |
| 16.1 | Introduction | 167 |
| 16.2 | Systems | 167 |
| 16.3 | Specials oce and | 167 |
| 16,4 | Specials Summary Suggested Readings | M (1/2) |
| 16.5 | Suggested Readings | REGISTRAR |
| nd O€) | Suggested Readings (S.V. University) Tirupati | 8.V. UNIVERSIT |
| sity | 181 | IINUFAIL |

DIRECTOR I
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

UNIT - XVII

| 17. ASSIGNED NUMBER BUILDING | |
|--|-----|
| 17.0 Aims and objectives | 175 |
| 17.1 Number Building In Generalia | 175 |
| 17.2 Number Building in Library Science | 177 |
| 17.3 Number Building in Mathamatics | 178 |
| 17.4 Number Building in Physics | 179 |
| 17.5 Number Building in Engineering | 180 |
| 17.6 Number Building in Chemistry | 181 |
| 17.7 Number building in Technology | 182 |
| 17.8 Number building in Biology | 184 |
| 17.9 Number building in Geology | 185 |
| 17.10 New Numbers assigned by S.R. Ranganathan | 186 |
| 17.11 Number building in Hydrology | 187 |
| 17.12 Number building in Botany | 188 |
| 17.13 Number building in Socialogy | 189 |
| 17.14 Number building in Law | 190 |
| 18. DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION UNIT - XIX | 195 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

19. COLON CLASSIFICATION



REGISTRAR 8.V. UNIVERSITY TIRUPATL

207

Bachelor of Library and Information Science (B.L.I.Sc)

PAPER -IV: LIBRARY CLASSIFICATION PRACTICE

- 1. Basic and Compound subjects, Antoriorising & Postoriorising common Isolates and Auxiliary Schedules (DC)
- 2. Compound Classes, complex classes
- 3. Different devices, Phase, Intra facet and Intra-array relations.

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

LIBRARY MANAGEMENT PAPER - V

- **Bv**

Dr. B. Veena Kumari Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDO©) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. Tirupathi, AP -51

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara Universit Tirupathi A'Pni 517

DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC() Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

UNIT - I

| 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 |
|--|
| 2 2 2 rration 5 7 |
| ration 2 5 7 rtance of |
| ration 5 7 rtance of |
| 7 rtance of |
| rtance of |
| |
| 8 |
| |
| 9 |
| 9 |
| 11 |
| 12 |
| 12 |
| 13 |
| 13 |
| 13 |
| 13 |
| 13 |
| 14 |
| 14 |
| 14 |
| 14 |
| 15 |
| to |
| 16 |
| 17 |
| to Libraries 17 |
| 17 |
| 18 |
| 18 |
| 18 |
| Principles 18 |
| $an^{ce} dn_{q} o_{p}$ 19 M |
| 18 19 19 S.V. University Tirupati |
| |

| 1.17 Methodology and Procedure of a Scientific Management Study 2 1.18 Summary 2 1.19 Key words 2 1.20 Self Check Exercises 2 1.21 Model Questions 2 1.22 Suggested Readings 2 **UNIT - II** 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BULDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2 2.1 Introduction 2 2.2 Planning 2 2.2.1 Clientele 2 2.2.2 Collection 2 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2 2.4 Premises and Equipment 3 2.5 Scope of the Services 3 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 3 2.7 Staff 3 2.8 Budget 3 2.9 Component by Library 2 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 3 2.11 Levels of Management 3 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 3 2.13 Library Building 3 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 3 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 3 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 3 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 3 should be based on the following points 3 3 stages 3 3 stages 3 3 should be based on the following points 3 3 stages 3 3 should be based on the following points 3 3 stages 3 3 should be based on the following points 3 3 stages 3 3 should be based on the following points 3 | | 1.15 | System Analysis | 20 |
|--|---|--------|--|------|
| 1.17 Methodology and Procedure of a Scientific Management Study 2 1.18 Summary 1.19 Key words 1.20 Self Check Exercises 1.21 Model Questions 1.22 Suggested Readings 2 IUNIT - II 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizational Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 3.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Eurniture and Equipment 3.19 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.10 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.11 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.12 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 St | | 1.16 | Applications of Scientific Management Princples to | |
| 1.18 Summary 1.19 Key words 1.20 Self Check Exercises 1.21 Model Questions 2.1.22 Suggested Readings 2.2.2 Suggested Readings 2.3 FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 3.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 3.13 Library Building 3.14 General Principles of Library Planning 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Planning 3.16 General Principles of Library Planning 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Planning 3.18 Eurniture and Equipment 3.19 St. University 3.10 The Structural Stage 3.15.4 The Planning Stage 3.15.4 The Planning Stage 3.15.5 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.5 St. University 3.5 St. Univers | | | Libraries | 20 |
| 1.19 Key words 1.20 Self Check Exercises 2.1.21 Model Questions 2.2.1.22 Suggested Readings 2.2.1.23 LiBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 3.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.15.4 The Planning Stage 3.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 3.4 Engitter and Equipment 3.5 V. University 3.5 V. University 3.7 UNIVERSITY Contracts 3.7 UNIVERSITY Contracts 3.8 Eugriture and Equipment 3.9 Contracts 3.9 UNIVERSITY Contracts 3.9 UNIVERSITY Contracts 3.9 UNIVERSITY Contracts 3.1 | | 1.17 | Methodology and Procedure of a Scientific Management Study | 20 |
| 1.20 Self Check Exercises 1.21 Model Questions 1.22 Suggested Readings 2 LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 3.2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment 2.19 Structural Stage 2.10 Furniture and Equipment 2.11 Eurniture and Equipment 2.12 Furniture and Equipment 2.13 Eurniture and Equipment 2.14 Equation of Equipment 2.15 Eurniture and Equipment 2.15 Equation of Equipment 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.17 Equation of Equipment 2.18 Equation of Equipment 2.19 Equation of Equipment 2.10 Equation of Equipment 2.11 Equation of Equipment 2.12 Equation of Equipment 2.13 Equation of Equipment 2.14 Equation of Equipment 2.15 Equation of Equipment 2.15 Equation of Equipment 2.16 Equation of Equipment 2.17 Equation of Equipment 2.18 Equation of Equipment 2.19 Equation of Equipment 2.10 Equation of Equipment 2.11 Equation of Equipment 2.12 Equation of Equipment 2.13 Equation of Equipment 2.14 Equation of Equipment 2.15 Equation of Equipment 2.15 Equation of Equipment 2.16 Equation of Equipment 2.17 Equation of Equation | | 1.18 | Summary | 22 |
| 1.21 Model Questions 1.22 Suggested Readings 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 3 REGISTA V. University Engineers 4 Library Engineers 4 Library Engineers 4 Library Engineers 4 Library Engineers 5 Library Engineers 5 Library Engineers 6 Library Engineers 6 Library Engineers 7 Library Engineers 7 Library Engineers 8 Library Engineers 9 Library | | 1.19 | Key words | 22 |
| LUNIT - II 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Appears 3 S.V. University Interior Planning 3 REGISTA 3 V. University Interior Planning 3 REGISTA 3 V. University Interior Planning 3 S.V. University Interior Planning Interior Planning 3 S.V. University Interior Planning Interior | | 1.20 | Self Check Exercises | 23 |
| 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 7 Eurniture and Equipment 3 S.V. University 3 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN INCOME. 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment 3 S.V. University 3 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN INCOME. 3 REGISTA 3 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN INCOME. 3 REGISTA 3 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN INCOME. 3 C.V. University 3 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN INCOME. 4 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN INCOME. 5 UNIVERSITY OF THE PLAN | | 1.21 | Model Questions | 24 |
| 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 3.2.5 Scope of the Services 3.6 Objectives of Library Service 3.7 Staff 3.8 Budget 3.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 3.11 Levels of Management 3.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 3.13 Library Building 3.14 General Principles of Library Planning 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 Albrary Building 3.17 Pre-Planning Stage 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.19 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.10 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.11 Library Building 3.12 Library Building 3.13 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.14 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creatio | | 1.22 | Suggested Readings | 24 |
| 2. LIBRARY PLANNING BUILDING SPACE REQUIREMENT FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 3.2.5 Scope of the Services 3.6 Objectives of Library Service 3.7 Staff 3.8 Budget 3.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 3.11 Levels of Management 3.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 3.13 Library Building 3.14 General Principles of Library Planning 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 Albrary Building 3.17 Pre-Planning Stage 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.19 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.10 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.11 Library Building 3.12 Library Building 3.13 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.14 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creatio | | | TINIT - II | |
| FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Association of Equipment 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 3 Times of Association of Equipment 3 S.V. University 3 Times of Association | | 4 T TD | | |
| 2.0 Aims & Objectives 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.3 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 3.4 Elization of Equipment 3.5 S.V. University 3.6 REGISTA 3.7 University 3.8 Furniture and Equipment 3.8 Furniture and Equipment 3.9 S.V. University 3.9 Component of Stage 3.1 Second of Stage 3.1 Second of Stage 3.2 Second of Stage 3.3 Second of Stage 3.4 Second of Stage 3.5 Second of Stage 3.6 Second of Stage 3.7 Stages of Creation of Stage 3.8 Second of Stage 3.9 Second of Stage 3.1 Second of Stage 3.1 Second of Stage 3.1 Second of Stage 3.2 Second of Stage 3.3 Second of Stage 3.4 Second of Stage 3.5 Second of Stage 3.6 Second of Stage 3.7 Stages of Stage | | | - | |
| 2.1 Introduction 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Coher Aspects 3.4 University 3.5 V. University 3.6 Creation of Claim of Aspects 3.7 Creation of Equipment 3.8 Eurniture and Equipment 3. Constitute and Equipment 3. Constitute and Equipment 3. Constitute and Equipment 4. Constitute and Equipment | | | - | 26 |
| 2.2 Planning 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 3.5 Scope of the Services 3.6 Objectives of Library Service 3.7 Staff 3.8 Budget 3.9 Component by Library 3.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 3.11 Levels of Management 3.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 3.13 Library Building 3.14 General Principles of Library Planning 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 General Principles of Library Building 3.17 Stages 3.18 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.19 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.10 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.11 Library Building 3.12 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.5 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.7 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.8 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.9 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.0 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.7 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.8 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.9 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.0 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.16 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.17 Stages of Creation of Library Building 3.18 Stages of Creation of Lib | | | 3 | 26 |
| 2.2.1 Clientele 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 3. REGISTA 3. REGISTA 3. REGISTA 3. REGISTA 3. REGISTA 3. University Entripring and Equipment 4. University Entripring and Equipment | | | | 26 |
| 2.2.2 Collection 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.3 Should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 3.4 REGISTA 3.5 Registary University 3.6 REGISTA 3.7 Registary University 3.7 University 3.8 REGISTA 3.9 REGISTA 3.0 REGISTA 3.1 Registary 4.1 Registary 4.1 Registary 4.2 Library Building 5. V. University 6. V. University 7. University 8. V. University | | 2.2 | | 27 |
| 2.3 For Special Libraries the basic Objectives are 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3. Stages 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.19 Premises and Equipment 3. Stages 3. V. University 3. REGISTA 3. University 3. REGISTA 3. University 3. REGISTA 3. University 3. University 3. REGISTA 3. University 3. University 3. REGISTA 3. University 3. University 3. University 3. University 4. University | | | | 28 |
| 2.4 Premises and Equipment 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3.3 Should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 3. The Rough Furniture and Equipment 3. The Purplement Stage 3. V. University 3. The Regista | | 23 | | 29 |
| 2.5 Scope of the Services 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3. Should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 3. REGISTA 3. University | | | | 30 |
| 2.6 Objectives of Library Service 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment 3 Stages 3 REGIST | | | • • | 31 |
| 2.7 Staff 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 3 St. University 3 REGISTA 3 University 3 Times of Times of St. University 3 Times of Times of St. University 3 Times of Times of St. University 3 Times of Time | | | | 31 |
| 2.8 Budget 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building 3 should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 3 REGIST | | | · · | 32 |
| 2.9 Component by Library 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.19 Component by Library Libraries 3 Component by Library Libraries 3 Component by Library Libraries 3 Component by Libraries 4 Component by Libraries 5 Component by Libraries 5 Component by Libraries 6 Component by Libraries 6 Component by Libraries 6 Component by Libraries 6 Component by Libraries 8 Component by Libraries 8 Component by Libraries 9 Component by Libraries 9 Component by Libraries 1 Componen | | | | 32 |
| 2.10 Organizatinoal Chart of University Libraries 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects AREGIST 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.19 Times ity 3 Times ity 3 Times ity 3 Times ity 3 Times ity 4 Times ity 3 Times ity 4 Times ity 5 Times ity | | | | 33 |
| 2.11 Levels of Management 2.12 Advantages of Organization Charts 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 3 REGISTA 4 REGISTA 5 REGISTA | | 2.10 | | 34 |
| 2.13 Library Building 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 3. V. University 3. REGISTA 3. V. University 3. UNIVERSITY 3. V. University | | 2.11 | • | 35 |
| 2.14 General Principles of Library Planning 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment Times of Library Planning 3 REGISTA S.V. University Times of Library Planning 3 REGISTA S.V. University Times of Library Planning 3 REGISTA S.V. University Times of Library Planning 3 AND UNIVERSITY S.V. University Times of Library Planning 3 ADD Control of Library Planning 3 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 3 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 3 3 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 3 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 3 3 4 4 5 7 7 8 7 8 7 8 7 8 8 7 8 8 | | 2.12 | Advantages of Organization Charts | 36 |
| 2.15 Stages of Creation of Library Building 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment S.V. University REGISTA S.V. University Titungstone REGISTA S.V. University Titungstone S.V. University Titungstone S.V. University Titungstone S.V. University Titungstone S.V. University S.V. University Titungstone S.V. University S.V. University | | 2.13 | Library Building | 37 |
| 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 3.17 Modular System 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment | | 2.14 | General Principles of Library Planning | 37 |
| 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects Modular System 2.18 Eurniture and Equipment Titunestic Titunestic S.V. University Titunestic S.V. University Titunestic | | 2.15 | Stages of Creation of Library Building | 37 |
| 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 3.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment | | | 2.15.1 Pre-Planning Stage | 38 |
| should be based on the following points 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment Times of Times | | | 2.15.2 Major areas to be considered while planning | 38 |
| 2.15.4 The Planning Stage 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.18 Furniture and Equipment | | | 2.15.3 The Rough Diagram of a Library Building | |
| 2.16 The Structural Stage 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment 2.18 Furniture and Equipment | | | should be based on the following points | 39 |
| 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and Other Aspects 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment S.V. University Titunest | | | 2.15.4 The Planning Stage | 39 |
| 2.17 Modular System 2.18 Furniture and Equipment (S.V. University) (S.V. University) (S.V. University) (S.V. University) | | 2.16 | The Structural Stage | 40/ |
| 2.18 Furniture and Equipment Figure 18.1. UNIVE | | | 2.16.1 Interior Decoration and other Aspects | M |
| 7 IX Furniture and Equipment 14 figure 15 | ۲ | 2.17 | Modular System (S.V. University) REGIS | TRAF |
| | | 2.18 | Furniture and Equipment 141 Trunch 101 | 41 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 2.18. 1 Control Region Fittings | 41 |
|------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| | 2.18.2 Book Racks | 41 |
| | 2.18.3 Double Faced Unit Rack | 41 |
| | 2.18.4 Catalogue Card Tray | 41 |
| | 2.18.5 Catalogue Card Cabinet | 42 |
| | 2.18.6 Catalogue Card Box | 42 |
| | 2.18.7. Charging Trays | 42 |
| | 2.18.8 Book Trolley | 43 |
| | 2.18.9 Periodical Display Racks | 43 |
| | 2.18.10 Reading Room Table | 43 |
| | 2.18.11 Study Table | 43 |
| | 2.18.12 Research Cubicles | 43 |
| 2.19 | Summary | 43 |
| 2.20 | Key words | 43 |
| 2.21 | Self Check Exercises | 43 |
| 2.22 | Model Questions | 44 |
| 2.23 | Suggested Readings | 44 |
| | UNIT - III | |
| | ERSONNEL MANAGEMENT POLICY AND STAFFING J | |
| | ALYSIS AND DISTRIBUTION SUPERVISION AND COM | |
| 3.0 | Aims & Objectives | 46 |
| 3.1 | Introduction The Importance of Degracous Management in Libraries | 46 |
| 3.2 | The Importance of Personnel Management in Libraries | 46 46 |
| | 3.2.1. Optimum Service with Minimum Resources | 46 46 |
| | 3.2.2. Development of Workers Capacities | |
| | 3.2.3. Development of Team Spirit | 47 47 |
| | 3.2.4. Continuous Vigilance | 47 |
| 3.3 | 3.2.5. Energies of the Staff should be Channelised | 47 |
| 3.3 3.4 | Qualities of an Efficient Personnel Manager Levels of Management | 47 |
| 3. 4 3.5 | Categories of Library Personnel | 48 |
| 3.3 | 3.5.1. Professionals | 48 |
| | 3.5.2. Semi-Professionals | 48 |
| | 3.5.3. Un-Skilled Workers | 49 |
| 3.6 | Determination of Number of Staff | 50 |
| 3.7 | Staff Formula | 50/ |
| 3.8 | Formula Prescribed by the Library Commune of | 1/ |
| | the UGC in 1957 (S.V. University) Tirupati | STRAR IIVERSI UPATI |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 3.9 | Latest | formula given by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan | 51 |
|-------|---------|--|------------------|
| | 3.9.1 | Recruitment | 51 |
| | 3.9.2 | Selection | 55 |
| | 3.9.3 | Induction and Orientation | 57 |
| | 3.9.4 | Training and Development | 57 |
| | 3.9.5 | On the Job training | 58 |
| | 3.9.6 | Off the Job Training | 58 |
| | 3.9.7 | Performance Appraisal | 58 |
| | 3.9.8 | Promotions, Transfers, Demotions and Separations | 61 |
| 3.10 | Summ | ary | 61 |
| 3.11 | Key w | vords | 62 |
| 3.12 | Self C | heck Exercises | 62 |
| | | UNIT - IV | |
| 4. FI | NANCIA | AL MANAGEMENT | |
| 4.0 | Aims | & Objectives | 66 |
| 4.1 | Introdu | uction | 66 |
| 4.2 | Source | es of Library Finance | 66 |
| | 4.2.1 | Grants | 66 |
| | 4.2.2 | Subscription | 66 |
| | 4.2.3 | Fees, Fines and Service Charges | 67 |
| | 4.2.4 | Gifts and Endowments | 67 |
| | 4.2.5 | Rents and Sales | 67 |
| 4.3 | Metho | ds of Financial Estimation | 67 |
| | 4.3.1 | Per - Capita Method | 67 |
| | 4.3.2 | Proportional Method | 67 |
| | 4.3.3 | Method of Detail | 67 |
| 4.4 | Budge | ting | 68 |
| 4.5. | Functi | ons of a Budget Estimation | 68 |
| 4.6 | Steps | for preparing the Budget | 69 |
| 4.7 | Types | of Budget | 69 |
| | 4.7.1 | Line Budget (Traditional Budget) | 69 |
| | 4.7.2 | Planning Programme Budgeting System (PPBS) | 71 |
| | 4.7.3 | Zero Base Budget System (ZBBS) | 72 |
| 4.8 | Accou | inting - Financial Records: Purpose & Types | 72 |
| | 4.8.1 | Factors and Purposes | 72 |
| | 4.8.2 | Rhythm of expenditure ance and | 1 172/ |
| | 4.8.3 | Rhythm of expenditure and Accounting Procedures Budgetary Control S.V. University | 15/13 |
| | 4.8.4 | Tirunati | NIVERS RUPATL |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 4.9 | Summary | 75 |
|--|--|------------------|
| 4.10 | Key words | 75 |
| 4.11 | Self Check Exercises | 76 |
| 4.12 | Model Questions | 76 |
| 4.13 | Suggested Readings | 76 |
| | UNIT - V | |
| | RARY AUTHORITIES COMMITTEES AND THEIR ROI | LE . |
| 5.0 | Aims & Objectives | 77 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 77 |
| 5.2 | Library Committee | 77 |
| 5.3 | Functions of a Library Committee | 79 |
| 5.4 | Librarian's role | 79 |
| 5.5 | Types of Committee | 80 |
| | 5.5.1 Self Perpetuating Committee | 80 |
| | 5.5.2 Nominated or Elected Committee | 80 |
| | 5.5.3 Executive Committee | 80 |
| | 5.5.4 Recommending Committee | 80 |
| | 5.5.5 Reporting Committee | 80 |
| | 5.5.6 Adhoc Committee | 80 |
| 5.6 | Library Committee in Indian Universities | 80 |
| 5.7 | University Librarian Vis-a-Vis Library Committee | 81 |
| 5.8 | Committee in Other types of Libraries | 81 |
| 5.9 | Summary | 81 |
| 5.10 | Key words | 82 |
| 5.11 | Self Check Exercises | 82 |
| 5.12 | Model Questions | 83 |
| 5.13 | Suggested Readings | 84 |
| | UNIT - VI | |
| 6. LIE 6.0 | RARY ROUTINE WORK FLOW IN DIFFERENT SECTI Aims & Objectives | ONS 87 |
| 6.1 | Introduction | 87 |
| 6.2 | New and Forthcoming Publication | 88 |
| 6.3 | Sources for Selection of Indian Publications | 88 |
| | 6.3.1 National and Trade Bibliographies | 89 |
| | | 90 |
| | 6.3.2 Book Trade Periodicals 6.3.3 Trade Bibliographies 6.3.4 Book Reviewing Periodicals | 90 M1/ |
| -50 - | 6.3.3 Trade Bibliographies 6.3.4 Book Reviewing Periodicals 6.3.5 Rook Pavious | 90 REGISTRAR |
| DIRECTOR Centre for Distance Online Education (C Sri Venkateswara Univ TIRUPATI - 517 50 | 6.3.5 Book Reviews Tirupati | 02 ON LINIVEDCIT |
| | * | |

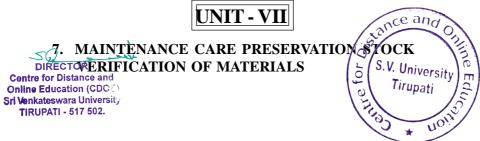
| | 6.3.6 | Publishers and Book Sellers Catalogues | 94 |
|------|---------|---|-------------------------|
| | 6.3.7 | Government Publications and Other Sources | 94 |
| 6.4 | Book E | Exhibitions and Book Fairs: | 94 |
| | 6.4.1 | Book Exhibitions | 94 |
| | 6.4.2 | Book Fairs | 95 |
| 6.5 | Book S | selection Principles | 95 |
| | 6.5.1 | Dewey's Motto | 96 |
| | 6.5.2 | Mc, Colven Demand Theory | 97 |
| | 6.5.3 | Drury's Principles | 98 |
| 6.6 | Librari | an's Responsibility in Book Selection | 98 |
| 6.7 | Knowl | edge about a Book Selection Sources | 99 |
| 6.8 | Book S | Selection on the Basis of Five Laws of | |
| | Library | y Science | 99 |
| 6.9 | Book S | Selection in Different Types of Libraries | 99 |
| | 6.9.1 | Book Selection Policy in a Public Library | 99 |
| 6.10 | Circula | ation Control - Charging and Discharging Metho | ods 102 |
| 6.11 | Charac | eteristics of a Circulation System | 102 |
| 6.12 | The Or | ganisation of a Circulation Department | 102 |
| 6.13 | Circula | ation Routines | 103 |
| 6.14 | Registi | ration of Members | 103 |
| | 6.14.1 | Lending of Books | 103 |
| | 6.14.2 | Charging of over-dues | 103 |
| | 6.14.3 | Reservation of Books | 104 |
| | 6.14.4 | Renewal of Books | 104 |
| 6.15 | Chargi | ng and Discharging Methods | 105 |
| 6.16 | Need f | or a Charging System | 105 |
| | 6.16.1 | Ledger System | 106 |
| | 6.16.2 | Dummy System | 107 |
| | 6.16.3 | Temporary Slip System | 107 |
| | 6.16.4 | One Card system | 107 |
| | 6.16.5 | Two Card system | 108 |
| | 6.16.6 | Browne Charging System | 108 |
| 6.17 | Chargi | ng and Discharging Work | 109 |
| 6.18 | Newar | k System | 111 |
| 6.19 | Chargi | ng and discharging procedure | 112 |
| | 6.19.1 | Charging Procedure | 112 |
| | 6.19.2 | Charging Procedure Discharging Procedure Advantages Disadvantages Disadvantages | 11/2 |
| | 6.19.3 | Advantages | N13 |
| | 6.19.4 | Disadvantages (S.V. University Tirupati | LV. UNIVERS TIRUPATL |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 6.20 | Machine Charging Systems | 113 | |
|------|---|------------|--|
| 6.21 | Computerised Loan Systems | 113 | |
| 6.22 | Acquisition of Library Materials | 113 | |
| | 6.22.1 General principle and policies | 113 | |
| | 6.22.2 Net Book Agreement / Tender System | 114 | |
| | 6.22.3 Quotations | 114 | |
| | 6.22.4 Appointing Approved Firms | 115 | |
| | 6.22.5 Role of Library Committee in Acquisition | 115 | |
| | 6.22.6 Book on approval | 115 | |
| | 6.22.7 Dealer Library Plan (DLP) | 116 | |
| | 6.22.8 Standing Orders | 116 | |
| | 6.22.9 Foreign Exchange | 117 | |
| | 6.22.10 Acquisitions by Gifts/Donations | 117 | |
| | 6.22.11 Duplicates and Exchanges | 118 | |
| - 22 | 6.22.12 Cooperative Acquisitions | 118 | |
| 6.23 | Types of Microform Material | 119 | |
| | 6.23.1 Microform | 119 | |
| | 6.23.2 Music scores | 119 119 | |
| | 6.23.3 Phonorecords6.23.4 Slides | 119 | |
| | | | |
| 624 | 6.23.5 Video Cassettes | 119 | |
| 6.24 | Book Processing | 119 | |
| | 6.24.1 Receiving Books in the Technical Section | 120 | |
| | 6.24.2 Processing of Books | 120 | |
| | 6.24.3 Physical Preparation of Book for use | 120 | |
| | 6.24.4 Classification & Cataloguing | 120 | |
| | 6.24.5 Shelf List | 120 | |
| | 6.24.6 Cataloguing Tools | 120 | |
| | 6.24.7 Final Processing | 122 | |
| | 6.24.8 Filing of Catalogue Cards | 122 | |
| | 6.24.9 Preparation of Recent Additional List | 122 | |
| 6.25 | Summary | 123 | |
| 6.26 | Key words | 124 | |
| 6.27 | Self Check Exercises | 126 | |
| 6.28 | Model Questions | 126 | |
| 6.29 | Suggested Readings | | |

UNIT - VII

Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.





| 7.0 | Aims & Objectives | 128 |
|------|--|------------------|
| 7.1 | Introduction | 128 |
| 7.2 | Maintenance Section Work | 129 |
| 7.3 | Stacking methods and materials | 129 |
| 7.4 | Methods of Shelving | 130 |
| 7.5 | Open Access Vs. Closed Access Libraries | 131 |
| 7.6 | Booking Binding | 131 |
| | 7.6.1 Why Binding | 132 |
| | 7.6.2 What is to be bound | 132 |
| | 7.6.3 Criteria for Book Binding | 133 |
| | 7.6.4 Covering Materials | 133 |
| | 7.6.5 Lettering and Tolling Materials | 134 |
| | 7.6.6 Machines and equipments required for book binding | 134 |
| | 7.6.7 Binding of Periodicals and other Reading Materials | 134 |
| | 7.6.8 Binding of other Reading Materials | 134 |
| 7.7 | Kinds of Book Binding | 135 |
| | 7.7.1 Process of Book Binding by Hand | 136 |
| 7.8 | Preservation | 138 |
| | 7.8.1 Physical Constituents of Books | 138 |
| | 7.8.2 Enemies of Book | 139 |
| | 7.8.3 While Shelving a Book | 140 |
| | 7.8.4 Chemical Preservation and Fumigation | 141 |
| 7.9 | Preservation: Non - Book Materials (NBM) | 141 |
| | 7.9.1 Preservation and Cleaning of Manuscripts | 142 |
| | 7.9.2 Preservation of Archives | 142 |
| 7.10 | Stock Verification | 143 |
| 7.11 | Advantages and Disadvantages of Stock Verification | 143 |
| 7.12 | Methods of Stock Verification | 145 |
| | 7.12.1 Accession Number Method | 145 |
| | 7.12.2 Shelf List Method | 146 |
| | 7.12.3 Duplicate set of Charging Card Method | 146 |
| | 7.12.4 Random Sampling Method | 146 |
| | 7.12.5 Audio Method | 146 |
| | 7.12.6 Computer Method | 146 |
| | 7.12.7 Acceptable Limits of Loans | 147 |
| 7.13 | Should the Librarian be held Responsible for Loss | 148 |
| 7.14 | Optimum Periodicity of Stock Verification | 14/3 |
| 7.15 | Summary Key words | 13/1/49 ISTDA |
| 7.16 | Key words (S.V. University) Tirupati TIR | IIVERS UPATI |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDGE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 7.17 | Self Check Exercises | 150 |
|--------|--|--|--|
| | 7.18 | Model Questions | 151 |
| | 7.19 | Suggested Readings | 151 |
| | | | |
| | | UNIT - VIII | |
| | 8. LI | BRARY RULES & REGULATIONS | |
| | 8.0 | Aims & Objectives | 153 |
| | 8.1 | Introduction | 153 |
| | 8.2 | Responsibility of the Librarian in Framin | g the Rules 154 |
| | 8.3 | Characteristics of Rules | 154 |
| | 8.4 | Model Rules | 154 |
| | 8.5 | Model Rules Draft | 155 |
| | 8.6 | Membership | 155 |
| | 8.7 | Library material to be issued | 155 |
| | 8.8 | Issue System | 155 |
| | 8.9 | Rules regarding admission to the library | 156 |
| | 8.10 | Rules for Borrowing Books | 156 |
| | 8.11 | Summary | 156 |
| | 8.12 | Key words | 157 |
| | 8.13 | Self Check Exercises | 157 |
| | 8.14 | Model Questions | 158 |
| | 8.15 | Suggested Readings | 158 |
| | | UNIT - IX | |
| | 9. LII | BRARY STASTICS ANNUAL REPORT | TS RECORDS |
| | 9.0 | Aims & Objectives | 160 |
| | 9.1 | Introduction | 160 |
| | 9.2 | Sources of Library Statistics | 161 |
| | 9.3 | Analysis of Library Statistics | 161 |
| | 9.4 | Kinds of Statistics | 161 |
| | 9.5 | Purpose of Library Statistics | 161 |
| | 9.6 | Acquisition Section | 161 |
| | 9.7 | Periodicals Section | 163 |
| | 9.8 | Technical Section | 163 |
| | 9.9 9.10 | Statistics of Library Members Issue Statistics | 164 164 |
| | 9.11 | Method of Presentation | 168 |
| | 9.12 | Utility of Library Statistics | 170 |
| | 9.13 | Annual Reports | 170 171 172 172 REGISTRAR |
| | 50. | 9.13.1 Purpose 9.13.2 Features | S.V. University REGISTRAR |
| Cent | DIRECTOR tre for Distanc e Education (| e and 3.3 Tachnical Service | 1 5 1 5 V. Univoreit. 1 1 A M. AAAAA PROCETA |
| Sri Ve | nkateswara Un RUPATI - 517 ! | niversity | |
| - " | RUPAII • 917 : | | TIRUPAIL |
| | | | |

| | 9.13.4 Public Services | 172 |
|--------|--|------------|
| | 9.13.5 Finance | 172 |
| 9.14 | Compilation of Annual Report | 172 |
| 9.15 | Reference Section | 173 |
| 9.16 | Indexing, Abstracting and Documentation | 173 |
| 9.17 | Mobile Library Services | 173 |
| 9.18 | Records | 173 |
| 9.19 | Kinds of Records | 174 |
| | 9.19.1 Records of Books9.19.2 Records of Non Book Materials | 174 175 |
| | 9.19.3 Cost Records | 176 |
| | 9.19.4 Service Records | 176 |
| | 9.19.5 Administrative Records | 178 |
| | 9.19.6 Maintenance of a Records Section | 179 |
| | 9.19.7 Preparation of the Records | 179 |
| | 9.19.8 Arrangement and Maintenance of the Record | 180 |
| | 9.19.9 Issue of the Record | 180 |
| | 9.19.10 Destruction of the Records | 180 |
| 9.20 | Summary | 181 |
| 9.21 | Key words | 181 |
| 9.22 | Self Check Exercises | 182 |
| 9.23 | Model Questions | 182 |
| | UNIT - X | |
| 10. PU | UBLICITY AND PUBLIC RELATIONS | |
| 10.0 | Aims & Objectives | 183 |
| 10.1 | Introduction | 184 |
| 10.2 | Objectives of Public Relations | 184 |
| 10.3 | Role of the Librarian | 184 |
| | 10.3.1 Library Committee | 184 |
| | 10.3.2 Alumni | 185 |
| | 10.3.3 Professional Associations | 185 |
| | 10.3.4 Academic Libraries | 185 |
| | 10.3.5 Public Relations Media | 185 |
| | 10.3.6 Annual Reports | 185 |
| | 10.3.7 Library Survey | 186 |
| | 10.3.8 Handbooks | 186 |
| | 10.3.9 Library Bulletin | 18/6 |
| | 10.3.9 Library Bulletin 10.3.10 Newspapers 10.3.11 Radio /TV | SISTRAR |
| | 10.3.11 Radio/TV (S.V. University) (S.V. University) (S.V. University) (S.V. University) | NIVERSIT |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | | 10.3.12 Library Weeks | 187 |
|----------|----------------------------|--|----------|
| | | 10.3.13 Personal Talk | 187 |
| | 10.4 | Key words | 187 |
| | 10.5 | Self Check Exercises | 188 |
| | 10.6 | Model Questions | 188 |
| | | UNIT - XI | |
| | 11 TT | BRARY PROFESSION | |
| | | | 100 |
| | 11.0 | Aims & Objectives | 189 |
| | 11.1 | Introduction The Name of the state of the s | 190 |
| | 11.2 | The New Library Professional | 190 |
| | 11.3 | Soft Skills for Librarians | 191 |
| | 11.4 | Self-Motivation for Librarians | 192 |
| | 11.5 | Importance Of Enhancing Competencies For Librarians | 193 |
| | 11.6 | Librarian's Job | 193 |
| | 11.7 | Changing Job For Librarians | 193 |
| | | 11.7.1 Defining the Library Profession | 194 |
| | 11.8 | Expanding and developing the corpus of knowledge | 195 |
| | 11.9 | Upgrading Library Education and Training | 196 |
| | 11.10 | Review the Service Principle | 196 |
| | 11.11 | Enforcing the Code of Ethics | 196 |
| | 11.12 | Setting and Maintaining Standards | 197 |
| | 11.13 | Professionalizing the Professional Association | 197 |
| | 11.14 | Attaining Legal and Social Recognition of Professional Status | 197 |
| | 11.15 | The Library Profession in the Virtual Library Environment | 198 |
| | 11.16 | Function of the Section | 198 |
| | 11.17 | Areas of Work | 198 |
| | 11.18 | Contact and Research | 199 |
| | 11.19 | Summary | 199 |
| | 11.20 | Key Words | 199 |
| | 11.21 | Self Check Exercises | 200 |
| | 11.22 | Model Questions | 200 |
| | | UNIT - XII | |
| | 12. LI | IBRARY AUTOMATION | |
| | 12.0 | Aims & Objectives | 202 |
| | 12.1 | Introduction | 202 |
| | 12.2 | History of Library Automation Why Library Automation? Automation in Libraries Need for Library Automation CDO(S) S.V. University Tirupati | 202 |
| | 12.3 | Why Library Automation? | 203 |
| < | 12.4 | Automation in Libraries Need for Library Automation | 204 |
| Contro | IRECTOR | Need for Library Automation $\left(\int_{S} \left(S.V. University \right) \right)$ | |
| Online i | Education (ateswara Un | CODO() | TIRUPATL |
| | IPATI - 517 5 | | / |
| | | * 110 | |
| | | | |

| 12.6 | Objectives of Library Automation | 206 |
|-------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 12.7 | Basic Requirement of Library Automation | 207 |
| 12.8 | Types of Library Data | 208 |
| | 12.8.1 Current Data | 208 |
| | 12.8.2 Retrospective data | 208 |
| 12.9 | Information Sources for Database Creation | 209 |
| | 12.9.1 Documents | 209 |
| | 12.9.2 Bibliographical Records | 209 |
| | 12.9.3 Online Databases | 209 |
| 12.10 12.11 12.12 | Features of Automation Components of Library Automation Management of Automated Library 12.12.1 Administrative and General Work | 210 210 211 211 |
| | 12.12.2 House Keeping and Routine Work | 211 |
| 12.13 | Online Catalogue Searching | 213 |
| 12.14 | Reporting and Management System | 213 |
| 12.15 | Resource Sharing and Networking | 213 |
| 12.16 | Library Management | 214 |
| 12.17 | Reference Service | 214 |
| 12.18 | Information Service | 214 |
| 12.19 | Functions of Library Management System | 214 |
| 12.20 | Ordering and Accessioning | 215 |
| 12.21 | Cataloguing System | 215 |
| 12.22 | Online Public Access Catalogue (OPAC) | 215 |
| 12.23 | Methods of Information Search | 215 |
| 12.24 | Summary | 216 |
| 12.25 | Key Words | 217 |
| 12.26 | Self Check Exercises | 217 |
| 12.27 | Model Questions | 218 |
| 12.28 | Suggested Readings | 218 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



LIBRARY CATALOGUING (THEORY & PRACTICE) PAPER - VI

- By

Dr. B. Veena Kumari Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University Tirupati - 517 502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDCC) Srl Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. Tirupathi, AP -5175

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education
Sri Venkates and Online Education
Sri Venkates and Online Education

REGISTRA
Tirupati
Tirupati
Tirupati
Tirupati

DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC() Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

UNIT - I

| | PART-I | Page | e No. |
|--|---|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Lib | rary Catalogue Nature Purpose and Fu | nctions | |
| 1.0 | Introduction | | 1 |
| 1.1 | Definitions | | 2 |
| | 1.1.1 Harrods Librarians Glossary and Re | eference Book | 2 |
| 1.2 | Objectives of Library Catalogue | | 3 |
| 1.3 | Functions of Library Catalogue | | 3 |
| 1.4 | Adjunct to the Library Catalogue | | 4 |
| 1.5 | Purpose and Functions | | 5 |
| 1.6 | Author Approach | | 5 |
| 1.7 | Title Approach | | 6 |
| 1.8 | Subject Approach | | 6 |
| | UNIT - II | | |
| 2.Forn | ns of Catalogues Physical Forms of Ca | talogue | |
| 2.0 | Introduction | | 7 |
| 2.1 | The various Physical Forms of Library Ca | talogue | 7 |
| | 2.1.1 Criteria of a good catalogue | | 11 |
| 2.2 | Inner form of Catalogue | | 12 |
| 2.3 | Outer Forms of Catalogue or Physical for | m | 19 |
| 2.4 | Features for the best physical form of libr | ary catalogue | 24 |
| 2.5 | References | | 24 |
| | UNIT - III | | |
| 3. Di | fferent Types of Catalogue Entries and | Their Functions | |
| 3.0 | Introduction | | 25 |
| 3.1 | Need for Catalogue Entries | | 25 |
| 3.2 | Format of Entry | | 26 |
| | 3.2.1 Kinds of Entries: in Dictionary and C | Classified Catalogues | 26 |
| 3.3 DIRECTOR Centre for Distance | Shelf List versus Classified Catalogue References | S.V. University | REGISTRAR 438.V. UNIVERSIT |
| Online Education (C Sri Venkateswara Unit TIRUPATI - 517 5 | versity | Tirupati O | TIRUPATL |

UNIT - IV

| 4. Noi | rmative Principles and Canon of Cat | aloguing | |
|--------|--|---------------------------|-------|
| 4.0 | Introduction | 45 | |
| 4.1 | Normative Principles | 46 | |
| 4.2 | Other Normative Principles | 49 | |
| 4.3 | Systematization of the Rules | 50 | |
| 4.4 | References | 50 | |
| | UNIT - V | | |
| 5. Su | bject Cataloguing & Subject Headin | g | |
| 5.0 | Introduction | | 51 |
| 5.1 | General Principles of Subject Catalogu | ing | 52 |
| | 5.1.1 Types of Subject Catalogues | | 52 |
| 5.2 | Evolution of Subject Cataloguing | | 53 |
| | 5.2.1 Need and purpose of Subject Cat | aloguing | 54 |
| | 5.2.2 Problems of Determining Subject | t Headings | 54 |
| | 5.2.3 Types of Subject Headings | | 54 |
| 5.3 | Methods of Deriving Subject Heading | s | 57 |
| 5.4 | Precis | | 74 |
| | 5.4.1 Precis Role Operators | | 79 |
| 5.5 | References | | 82 |
| | UNIT - VI | | |
| 6. Pre | e-natal Co-operative and Centralized | Cataloguing | |
| 6.0 | Prenatal Cataloguing | | 83 |
| 6.1 | Cooperative Catalouging | | 84 |
| | 6.1.1 Areas of Cooperative Cataloguin | ıg | 84 |
| | 6.1.2 Aims and objectives of Cooperation | ve Cataloguing | 85 |
| | 6.1.3 Aspects of Cooperative Catalogu | ing | 85 |
| | 6.1.4 Forms of Cooperative Cataloguin | ig at International Level | 85/ |
| | 6.1.5 Advantages & Disadvartages of | | TRAP |
| 6.2 | Centralized Cataloguing (S.V. Uni | Versity (ati | VERSI |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 6.2.1 Objectives of Centralized Cataloguing | 86 |
|--------------|--|-----|
| | 6.2.2 Advantages of Centralized Cataloguing | 87 |
| | 6.2.3 Forms of Centralization | 87 |
| 6.3 | Difference between Co-operative and Centrallized Cataloguing | 90 |
| 6.4 | Selective and Simplified Cataloguing | 90 |
| | 6.4.1 Simplified Cataloguing | 91 |
| | 6.4.2 Selective Cataloguing | 92 |
| | 6.4.3 Influence of Published Abstracting and Indexing Services | 93 |
| 6.5 | References | 94 |
| | UNIT - VII | |
| 7. Ur | nion Catalogue | |
| 7.0 | Introduction | 95 |
| 7.1 | Historical Background, Defintions and Functions of Union | |
| | Catalogues | 96 |
| 7.2 | Union Catalogue | 96 |
| 7.3 | Functions of Union Catalogue | 97 |
| 7.4 | Uses of Union Catalogue | 97 |
| 7.5 | Pre- Requisites for a Union Catalogue | 98 |
| 7.6 | Criteria for Compilation of Union Catalogue | 99 |
| 7.7 | References | 100 |
| | UNIT - VIII | |
| 8. Li | mited Cataloguing | |
| 8.0 | Introduction | 101 |
| 8.1 | Types of Limited Cataloguing | 101 |
| 8.2 | Factors | 103 |
| 8.3 | References | 104 |
| | UNIT - IX | |

9.0 Introduction
9.1 Machine Readable Cataloguing (MARC) sity Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 9.1.1 Marc Formats | 106 |
|-------|---|------------------------------|
| | 9.1.2 MARC 21 | 106 |
| | 9.1.3 Uses of MARC | 107 |
| 9.2 | International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) | 108 |
| | 9.2.1 Structure of an ISBD record | 108 |
| | 9.2.2 Meaning of common English-language physical descrip | tion |
| | abbreviations | 109 |
| | 9.2.3 Punctuation of ISBD | 109 |
| 9.3 | Angelo American Cataloguing Rules 2 (AACR2) | 110 |
| | 9.3.1 Levels of Description | 111 |
| | 9.3.2 Positions of Different Elements in the Entry | 112 |
| | 9.3.3 Punctuation | 112 |
| 9.4 | Common Communication Format (CCF) | 114 |
| | 9.4.1 Scope and Use | 114 |
| | 9.4.2 Structure | 114 |
| | 9.4.3 Magnetic Medium Structure | 116 |
| 9.5 | International Standard Book Number (ISBN) & ISSN | 117 |
| | 9.5.1 Organisation for Implementation of the International Se | andard |
| | Book Number System | 118 |
| 9.6 | International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) | 118 |
| | 9.6.1 Scope and Field of Application | 119 |
| | 9.6.2 Construction of ISSN | 119 |
| 9.7 | References UNIT - X | 120 |
| 10. C | hoice and Rendeering of Headings of Name of Personal | |
| I | Heading and Indic Names | |
| 10.0 | Introduction | 121 |
| 10.1 | Author Catalogue | 122 |
| 10.2 | Choice of Heading | 122 |
| 10.3 | Rules for Choice of Heading in ACR-Hand CCC | 1 / 1/2 |
| 10.4 | Classified Catalogue Code (S.V. University) (S.V. University) | SISTRAF INIVERS RUPATL |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| | 10.4.1 Hindu Names | | 123 |
|--|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| | 10.4.2 Bengali Names | | 125 |
| | 10.4.2.1 Evolution of Bengali Su | irnames | 125 |
| | 10.4.2.2 Categorization of Beng | ali Surnames | 126 |
| | 10.4.3 Punjabi Names | | 128 |
| | 10.4.3.1 Complimentary Words | in Punjabi Names | 130 |
| | 10.4.3.2 Family Name (Last Wo | ord) | 130 |
| | 10.4.3.3 Honorofic Word(s) | | 130 |
| 10.5 | South India Names | | 132 |
| 10.6 | Western Indian Names | | 133 |
| 10.7 | Marathi and Gujarati Names | | 133 |
| 10.8 | U.P. Names | | 133 |
| 10.9 | Sikh Names | | 134 |
| 10.10 | References | | 134 |
| | UNIT - XI | | |
| 11. M | anagement of Cataloguing Departmen | t | |
| 11.0 | Introduction | | 135 |
| 11.1 | Organization | | 135 |
| 11.2 | Plannung of Catalogue | | 136 |
| 11.3 | References | | 138 |
| | UNIT - XII | | |
| 12. Fi | ling of Catalogue Cards | | |
| 12.0 | Introduction | | 139 |
| 12.1 | Principal of Arrangement and Filing Sys | tems | 139 |
| 12.2 | Alphabetic Arrangement | | 141 |
| 12.3 | Orders of Arrangement | | 144 |
| 12.4 | Chinese Names | | 145 |
| | 12.4.1 Hindu names | | 145 |
| 12.5 | Arrangement of Guide Cards | ance and O | 145 MA |
| 52.6 | Rules for Filing in CCC and AACR | S.V. University | 145 REGISTRAR |
| DIRECTOR Centre for Distance Online Education Sri Venkateswara Ur TIRUPATI - 517 | niversity | S.V. University Tirupati | 14.8.V. UNIVERSITY TIRUPATL |
| | | 1 91 - 010 | |

PART-II

UNIT - I

| 1. Ar | nglo - American Cataloging Rules | |
|-------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 1.0 | Introduction | 149 |
| 1.1 | Main Entries | 149 |
| | 1.1.1 Elements | 152 |
| | 1.1.2 Unit Card | 152 |
| 1.2 | Added Entries | 153 |
| 1.3 | References | 154 |
| | 1.3.1 Indentions and Spacing | 155 |
| 1.4 | Punctuation Marks | 157 |
| 1.5 | Classified Catalogue Code VS AACR | 158 |
| | UNIT - II | |
| 2. Si | ngle Personal Author | |
| 2.0 | Introduction | 161 |
| 2.1 | Title -1 | 161 |
| | 2.1.1 Title - 2 | 163 |
| | 2.1.2 Title - 3 | 163 |
| 2.2 | Two personal Authors | 164 |
| | 2.2.1 Title - 4 | 164 |
| | 2.2.2 Title - 5 | 165 |
| 2.3 | Three personal Authors | 167 |
| | 2.3.1 Title - 6 | 167 |
| | 2.3.2 Title - 7 | 169 |
| 2.4 | Four personal Authors | 170 |
| | 2.4.1 Title - 8 | 171 |
| | 2.4.2 Title - 9 | 171 |

UNIT - III

3. Personal Author (s) with added Collaborator

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

3.0 Introduction

3.1 Title-10





UNIT-IV

| 4. Su | bject Headings | |
|-------|--|-----|
| 4.1 | Introduction | 177 |
| 4.2 | Subject Headings | 178 |
| | 4.2.1 Need for Subject Headings | 178 |
| | 4.2.2 Basic Principles | 178 |
| 4.3 | How to Derive Subject Headings? | 181 |
| | 4.3.1 Grammar of Subject Headings | 181 |
| | 4.3.2 Compound Headings | 182 |
| | 4.3.3 Sub-division by Physical Form | 182 |
| | 4.3.4 Sub-division by Place | 182 |
| | 4.3.5 Names of Places Sub-divided by Subject | 183 |
| 4.4 | Worked out Examples | 183 |
| 4.5 | Conclusion | 185 |
| 4.6 | Further Readings | 186 |
| | UNIT - V | |
| 5. Co | orporate Bodies Government Structure | |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 187 |
| 5.2 | Types of Corporate Bodies | 187 |
| | 5.2.1 Government as Corporate Body | 187 |
| | 5.2.2 Government Officials | 188 |
| | 5.2.3 Government Agencies | 188 |
| 5.3 | Examples under Government | 189 |
| | 5.3.1 Example - Government Official | 189 |
| | 5.3.2 Examples under Subordinate Bodies | 195 |
| | 5.3.3 Example under Legislative Body | 197 |
| | UNIT - VI | |

6. Committees and Commissions

6.1 Introduction

DIRECTOR Examples
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



UNIT - VII

| 7. In | stitutions, Associations & Societies | |
|-------|---|-----|
| 7.1 | Introduction | 211 |
| 7.2 | Examples | 211 |
| | UNIT - VIII | |
| 8. Ca | atalogue Card | |
| 8.0 | Introduction | 221 |
| 8.1 | Structure | 221 |
| 8.2 | Lines in card | 221 |
| 8.3 | Section of entry | 222 |
| | 8.3.1 Style of writing | 222 |
| | UNIT - IX | |
| 9. Si | ingle Volumed Books | |
| 9.1 M | Main entry and added entries | 223 |
| | 9.1.1 Number Entry | 223 |
| | 9.1.2 Word Entry | 223 |
| 9.2 | Sections of the main entry | 224 |
| 9.3 | Classification of the added entries | 224 |
| 9.4 | Arrangement of the entries | 225 |
| 9.5 | Editor of the series entry | 230 |
| 9.6 | Cross reference index entry: Structure and types | 235 |
| | 9.6.1 Leading Section | 235 |
| | 9.6.1.1 Referred from Heading | 235 |
| | 9.6.1.2 Referred to Heading | 235 |
| | 9.6.1.3 Deviation From Canon of as Certainability | 236 |
| | 9.6.2 Type of Cross Reference Index Entry | 236 |
| | IINIT - X | |

10. Multi - Volumed Books

10.0

10.1

10.2

Multi volumed Book having no special title Volume number in cross reference entry sity

DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDCC) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

UNIT - XI

| 11. P | eriodicals | |
|-------|--|-----|
| 11.1 | Simple peroidicals | 253 |
| | UNIT - XII | |
| 12. C | omposite Books | |
| 12.1 | Introduction | 259 |
| 12.2 | Difference between multipart items and other documents | 259 |
| | UNIT - XIII | |
| 13. C | hoice and Rendering in Respect of Personal Authors | |
| 13.0 | Introduction | 265 |
| 13.1 | Author catalogue | 265 |
| 13.2 | Choice of heading | 265 |
| 13.3 | Classified catalogue code | 266 |
| | UNIT - XIV | |
| 14. C | orporate Authors | |
| 14.1 | Generic name entry | 293 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Notes

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



INTRODUCTION TO COMPUTERS PAPER - VII

- **By**

Dr. B. Veena Kumari

Dr. A Jaya Madhuri

Dept. of Library and Information Science S.V. University

Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDCC) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. Tirupathi, AP -51

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Opline Education/

Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathis A Punisti

DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC() Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

CONTENTS

| | UNII-I | Page No. |
|-------|--|----------|
| 1. I | ntroduction to Information Technology | |
| 1.0 | Aims and objectives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Introduction to information technology | 1 |
| 1.2 | Historical development of computers | 27 |
| | 1.2.1 Applications of computers | 34 |
| 1.3 | Summary | 36 |
| 1.4 | Answer to check your progress | 37 |
| 1.5 | Review questions | 39 |
| | 1.5.1 Long answer type questions | 39 |
| | 1.5.2 Short answer type questions | 39 |
| | UNIT - II | |
| 2. Co | omputer Systems | |
| 2.0 | Aims and objectives | 41 |
| 2.1 | Computer systems | 41 |
| | 2.1.1 Hardware Input Output process | 48 |
| | 2.1.2 Stage without Internal and External device | 49 |
| | 2.1.3 Systems software | 55 |
| | 2.1.4 Application software | 56 |
| | 2.1.5 Operating systems MSDOS | 57 |
| 2.2 | Summary | 68 |
| 2.3 | Answer to check your progress | 68 |
| 2.4 | Review questions | 70 |
| | 2.4.1 Long answer type questions | 70 |
| | 2.4.2 Short answer type questions | 70 |
| | UNIT - III | |

3. Data Processing Basic Processes

3.0 Aims and Objectives

3.1 Data processing basic processes

Data proc DIRECTOR Centre for Distance Shiftmary Online Education (CDC Sri Wenkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

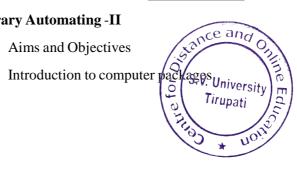


| 3.3 | Answer to check your progress | 81 |
|--------------|---|-----|
| 3.4 | Review questions | 82 |
| | 3.4.1 Long answer type questions | 82 |
| | 3.4.2 Short answer type questions | 82 |
| | UNIT - IV | |
| 4. Pı | rogramming Introduction Programming | |
| 4.0 | Aims and Objectives | 83 |
| 4.1 | Introduction to programming | 83 |
| 4.2 | Elements of systems analysis | 85 |
| 4.3 | Flow charting | 87 |
| 4.4 | Summary | 118 |
| 4.5 | Answer to check your progress | 119 |
| 4.6 | Review questions | 120 |
| | 4.6.1 Long answer type questions | 120 |
| | 4.6.2 Short answer type questions | 120 |
| | UNIT - V | |
| 5. Li | brary Automating-I | |
| 5.0 | Aims and Objectives | 121 |
| 5.1 | Library automating | 121 |
| | 5.1.1 Circulating control | 130 |
| | 5.1.2 Acquisition | 139 |
| | 5.1.3 Periodical control and organizating | 140 |
| 5.2 | Summary | 142 |
| 5.3 | Answer to check your progress | 142 |
| 5.4 | Review questions | 143 |
| | 5.4.1 Long answer type questions | 143 |
| | 5.4.2 Short answer type questions | 143 |
| | UNIT - VI | |

6. Library Automating -II

6.0

6.1





DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

| 6.2 | Use of CDS/ISIS in Library | 155 |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 6.3 | Summary | 161 |
| 6.4 | Answer to check your progress | 161 |
| 6.5 | Review questions | 162 |
| | 6.5.1 Long answer type questions | 162 |
| | 6.5.2 Short answer type questions | 162 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





Notes

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



ప్రాచీన తెలుగు కవిత్వం

డిగ్రీ (జనరల్) / సెమిస్టర్ - l

రచయితలు

යාා ඩී. මණි්්

దాు ఎస్. సునీల్ కుమార్

తెలుగు విభాగం ఎస్. వి. విశ్వ విద్యాలయం తిరుపతి, ఆంధ్రపదేశ్ – 517 502



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University

Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education

Sri Venkateswara University

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPARI - 917 502.

Tirupathi, AP-517 502





విజయోస్తు

మమ్మీ అన్న మాటలో మమకారం కన్న అమ్మ! అన్న మాటలో మాధుర్యం మిన్న అమ్మ నుండి అలవదే అమృత భాష ఆత్మీయతను పెంచే ఆంధ్ర భాష

మాధుర్యాన్ని పెంచే మాన్యభాష రాగసుధలను రంగరించే రాష్ట్ర భాష మమకారాన్ని పంచే మాతృభాష తేనెలొలుకు భాష మన తెలుగు భాష

తెలుగు భాషను గౌరవిద్దాం తెలుగు భాషలో మాట్లాదుదాం తెలుగు జాతికి వన్నెతెద్దాం ఇదే తెలుగుతల్లికి మనమిచ్చే నీరాజనాలు

- రచయితలు

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





జనరల్ తెలుగు / సెమిస్టర్ - 1 ప్రాచీన తెలుగు కవిత్వం

ఈ కోర్సు విజయవంతంగా ముగించాక, విద్యార్థులు క్రింది అభ్యసన ఫలితాలను పొందగలరు.

- ప్రాచీన తెలుగుసాహిత్యం యొక్క ప్రాచీనతను, విశిష్టతను గుర్తిస్తారు. తెలుగు సాహిత్యంలో ఆదికవి నన్నయ కాలంనాటి భాషానంన్కృతులను, ఇతిహాసకాలంనాటి రాజనీతి విషయాలపట్ల పరిజ్ఞానాన్ని సంపాదించగలరు.
- శివకవుల కాలంనాటి మతపరిస్థితులను, భాషావిశేషాలను గ్రహిస్తారు. తెలుగు 2. సుడికారం, సామెతలు, లోకోక్తులు మొదలైన భాషాంశాల పట్ల పరిజ్ఞానాన్ని పొందగలరు.
- తిక్కన భారతంనాటి మత, ధార్మిక పరిస్థితులను, తిక్కన కవితాశిల్పాన్ని, నాటకీయతను అవగాహన చేసుకోగలరు.
- ఎఱ్ఱన సూక్తివైచిత్రిని, ఇతిహాస కవిత్వంలోని విభిన్న రీతులపట్ల అభిరుచిని పొందగలరు. (శీనాథుని కాలం నాటి కవితావిశేషాలను, మొల్ల కవితా విశిష్టతను గుర్తించగలరు.
- తెలుగు పద్యం స్వరూప–స్వభావాలను, సాహిత్యాభిరుచిని పెంపొందించుకుంటారు. ప్రాచీన కావ్యభాషలోని వ్యాకరణాంశాలను అధ్యయనం చేయడం ద్వారా భాషాసామర్థ్యాన్ని, రచనలో మెళకువలను గ్రహించగలరు.

పాఠ్య ప్రణాళిక

యూనిట్ – Ī

రాజనీతి నన్నయ

మహాభారతం – సభాపర్వం – ప్రథమాశ్వాసం – (26–57 పద్యాలు)

యూనిట్ - II

నన్నెచోదుదు దక్షయజ్ఞం –

DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and కుమారసంభవం – ద్వితీయాశ్వాసం – (49 -

Online Education (CDOE)

Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.





యూనిట్ - III

ధౌమ్య ధర్మోపదేశము – తిక్కన

మహాభారతం – విరాటపర్వం – ప్రథమాశ్వాసం – (116 – 146) పద్యాలు

యూనిట్ - IV

పలనాటి బెబ్బులి - డ్రీనాథుడు (పలనాటి వీరచరిత్ర - ద్విపద కావ్యం పుట 108 - 112 'బాలచంద్రుడు భీమంబగు సంగ్రామం బొనర్చుట.. (108)...

వెఱగంది కుంది' (112) సం. అక్కిరాజు ఉమాకాంతం ముద్రణ. వి. కె. స్వామి, బెజవాద 1911.

యూనిట్ – ${f V}$

సీతారావణ సంవాదం - మొల్ల

రామాయణము - సుందరకాండము - (40 - 87 పద్యాలు)

వ్యాకరణం

సంధులు: ఉత్వ, త్రిక, ద్రుత్మపకృతిక, నుగాగమ, ద్విరుక్తటకారాదేశ, యణాదేశ, వృద్ధి, శ్చుత్వ, జశ్వ, అనునాసిక సంధులు.

సమాసాలు: అవ్వయిభావ, తత్పురుష, కర్మధారయ, ద్వంద్వ, ద్విగు, బహుబ్రీహి.

అలంకారాలు:

అర్థాలంకారాలు: ఉపమ, ఉత్పేక్ష, రూపక, స్వభావోక్తి, అర్ధాంతరవ్యాస, అతిశయోక్తి. శబ్దాలంకారాలు: అనుప్రాస (వృత్యనుప్రాస, ఛేకామప్రాస లాటానుప్రాస, అంత్యానుప్రాస) ఛందస్సు

వృత్తాలు: ఉత్పలమాల, చంపకమాల, శార్దూలము, మత్తేభము;

జాతులు: కందం, ద్విపద; ఉపజాతులు: ఆటవెలది, తేటగీతి, సీసం మరియు ముత్యాలసరాలు

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





విషయ సూచిక ప్రాచీన తెలుగు కవిత్వం

| | యూనిట్-1 : రాజనీతి | |
|-----------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1.1 | ఉద్దేశం | 1 |
| 1.2 | కవి పరిచయం | 1 |
| 1.3 | మహాభారత (పాశస్త్రము | 1 |
| 1.4 | పాఠ్యభాగం | 2 |
| 1.5 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 7 |
| 1.6 | కఠిన పదాలకు అర్థాలు | 7 |
| 1.7 | (పతిపదార్ధ : తాత్పర్యాలు | 10 |
| 1.8 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాఖ్యలు | 17 |
| 1.9 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | 19 |
| 1.10 | ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు | 22 |
| 1.11 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | 30 |
| 1.12 | అభ్యాసం | 31 |
| | యూనిట్ –2: దక్షయజ్ఞం | |
| 2.1 | ఉద్దేశం | 33 |
| 2.2 | కవి పరిచయం | 33 |
| 2.3 | పాఠ్యభాగము | 34 |
| 2.4 | పాఠ్యాంశ పరిచయం | 39 |
| 2.5 | (పతిపదార్ధ – తాత్పర్యాలు | ace and |
| 2.6 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాఖ్యలు | S.V. University |
| Education | R ခွာဗုပ္မွဴၾကလြာဇာဝ ဗိဿ nce ang n (CDO) University | 39 S.V. University Tirupati |

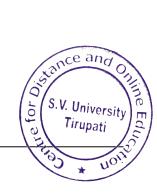


| 2.8 | డ్రవ్నలు – జవాబులు | 54 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 2.9 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | 63 |
| 2.10 | ဖ ဍ ာ္မွာဂ်ဝ | 64 |
| | యూనిట్-3: ధౌమ్య ధర్మోపదేశం | |
| 3.1 | ఉద్దేశం | 67 |
| 3.2 | పరిచయం | 67 |
| 3.3 | పాఠ్యభాగము | 68 |
| 3.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 73 |
| 3.5 | కఠిన పదాలకు అర్థాలు | 73 |
| 3.6 | (పతిపదార్ధ – తాత్పర్యాలు | 75 |
| 3.7 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాఖ్యలు | 80 |
| 3.8 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | 82 |
| 3.9 | [పశ్నలు −సమాధానములు | 85 |
| 3.10 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | 91 |
| 3.11 | ဖ ဍ ာ္မွာဂ်ဝ | 93 |
| | యూనిట్-4: పలనాటి బెబ్బులి | |
| 4.1 | ఉద్దేశం | 95 |
| 4.2 | పరిచయం | 95 |
| 4.3 | పాఠ్యభాగము | 96 |
| 4.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 104 |
| 4.5 | కఠిన పదాలకు అర్ధాలు | 104 .ce and |
| 4.6 | సందర్భ్ససహీత వ్యాఖ్యాలు | S.V. University Tirupati |
| DIRECTO | ైపార్వభాగం సారాంశం | S.V. University |
| Centre for Distar Online Education | nce anଖି" | Tirupati |
| Sri Venkateswara U | Jniversity | vii |
| TIRUPATI - 517 | 302. | \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ |



| 4.8 | వ్యాసరూప (ప్రశ్నలు | 113 |
|------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 4.9 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | 118 |
| 4.10 | అభ్యాసం | 120 |
| | యూనిట్-5 : సీతారావణ సంవాదం | |
| 5.0 | ఉద్దేశం | 121 |
| 5.1 | కవియిత్రి పరిచయం | 121 |
| 5.2 | పాఠ్యభాగము | 121 |
| 5.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 130 |
| 5.4 | కఠిన పదాలకు అర్థాలు | 130 |
| 5.5 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాఖ్యలు | 137 |
| 5.6 | పాఠ్యభాగసారాంశం | 139 |
| 5.7 | (పశ్నలు సమాధానములు | 144 |
| 5.8 | సంగ్రహరూప ప్రశ్నలు | 153 |
| 5.9 | అభ్యాసం | 156 |
| | యూనిట్-6 : వ్యాకరణం | |
| 6.1 | సంధులు | 157 |
| 6.2 | సమాసములు | 162 |
| 6.3 | అలంకారములు | 167 |
| 6.4 | ఛందస్సు | 170 |







ఆధునిక తెలుగు సాహిత్యం

డిగ్రీ (జనరల్) / సెమిస్టర్ - II

రచయితలు

සා ඩී. **ම**ණි්්

దాగ ఎస్. సునీల్ కుమార్

ತಲುಗು ವಿಭಾಗಂ ఎస్. వి. విశ్వ విద్యాలయం తిరుపతి, ఆంధ్రప్రదేశ్ - 517 502



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Venkateswara Univers Centre for Distance and Tirupati

Online Education (CDOS) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP-517

i

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education
Sector Sri Venkateswara University
University

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University

TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -517 502

University Tirupati



జనరల్ తెలుగు / సెమిస్టర్ - II

ఆధునిక తెలుగు సాహిత్యం

అభ్యసన ఫలితాలు

ఈ కోర్సు విజయవంతం ముగించాక, విద్యార్థులు క్రింది అభ్యసన ఫలితాలను పొందగలరు.

- 1. ఆంగ్లభాష (పభావం కారణంగా తెలుగులో వచ్చిన ఆధునిక సాహిత్యాన్ని, అని విశిష్టతను గుర్తిస్తారు.
- 2. సమకాలీన ఆధునిక సాహిత్య ప్రక్రియలైన వచన కవిత్వం, కథ, నవల, నాటకం, విమర్శ లపై అవగాహన పొందుతారు.
- 3. భావకవిత, అభ్యుదయ కవితలక్ష్యాలను గూర్చిన జాన్హాన్ని పొందుతారు. అస్తిత్వవాద ఉద్యమాలపుట్టుకను, అవశ్యకతను గుర్తిస్తారు.
- 4. కథాసాహిత్యం ద్వారా సామాజిక చైతన్యాన్ని పొందుతారు. సిద్ధాంతాల ద్వారా కాకుండా, వాస్తవ పరిస్థితులను తెలుసుకోవడం ద్వారా సిద్ధాంతాన్ని సమీక్షించగలరు.
- 5. ఆధునిక తెలుగు కల్పనాసాహిత్యం ద్వారా సామాజిక, సాంస్కృతిక, రాజకీయ చైతన్యాన్ని పొందుతారు.

పాఠ్య ప్రణాళిక

్యానిట్– I: ఆధునిక కవిత్వం

1. ఆధునిక కవిత్వం : పరిచయం

2. కొండవీడు : దువూరి రామిరెడ్డి

(కవికోకిల గ్రంథావళి ఖండకావ్యాలు నక్ష్మతమాల సంపుటి నుండి)

3. మాతృసంగీతం : అనిసెట్టి సుబ్బారావు (అగ్నివీణ కవితాసంపుటి నుండి)

4. తాతకో నూలుపోగు : బందరు ప్రసాదమూర్తి (కలనేత కవితాసంపుటి నుండి)

యూనిట్ - II: కథానిక

5. తెలుగు కథానిక : పరిచయం

6.

భయం (Busector : కాలీపట్నం రామరావు Centre for Distance and

Online Education (CDC) 7. స్వేమాట్లు స్టాబ్లు స్టాబ్లు సాగేశ్వరరావు TIRUPATI - 517 502.





యూనిట్ - III: నవల

8. తెలుగు నవల : పరిచయం

9. రథచక్రాలు (నవల) : మహీధర రామ్మోహన రావు (సంక్షిప్త ఇతివత్తం మాత్రం)

10. రథచక్రాలు (సమీక్షా వ్యాసం) డా.గయల్లాప్రగడ మల్లికార్జునరావు

యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం

11. తెలుగు నాటకం : పరిచయం

12. యక్షగానము (నాటిక) : ఎం.వి.ఎస్. హరనాథరావు

13. అపురూప కళారూపాల విధ్వంసదశ్యం యక్షగానము (సమీక్షా వ్యాసం) డా.॥ కందిమళ్ళ సాంబశివరావు

యూనిట్- V: విమర్శ

14. తెలుగు సాహిత్యం విమర్శ: పరిచయం

15. విమర్శ స్వరూప స్వభావాలు ఉత్తమ విమర్శకుడు లక్షణాలు

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





విషయ సూచిక

ఆధునిక తెలుగు సాహిత్యం

| | |)ట్ - 1: ఆధునిక కవిత్వం | | |
|------|--|-------------------------|--|--------|
| | | ునిక కవిత్వం - పరిచయం | | |
| 1.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 1 |
| 1.2 | <u>ವ</u> ಾಕ್ಯಭಾಗಂ | | | 1 |
| 1.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 7 |
| 1.4 | ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు | | | 8 |
| 1.5 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 12 |
| 1.6 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 16 |
| | - • | 2. కొండవీడు | | |
| 2.1 | ఉద్దేశం | | | 17 |
| 2.2 | కవి పరిచయం | | | 17 |
| 2.3 | పాఠ్యభాగము | | | 17 |
| 2.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 21 |
| 2.5 | <u> ක</u> ෙත | | | 21 |
| 2.6 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాక్యాలు | | | 22 |
| 2.7 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 25 |
| 2.8 | ద్రశ్న జవాబులు – వ్యాస రూప ద్రశ్నలు | | | 26 |
| 2.9 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 27 |
| 2.10 | విద్యార్దులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 28 |
| | | 3. మాతృసంగీతం | | |
| 3.1 | ఉద్దేశం | | | 29 |
| 3.2 | కవి పరిచయం | | | 29 |
| 3.3 | పాఠ్యాంశం | | | 29 |
| 3.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 38 |
| 3.5 | <u> ක</u> ෙත | | co 3b | 38 |
| 3.6 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాఖ్యలు 🔻 | | Stance and Only | 39 |
| 3.7 | ವಾರ್ಯಘ್ರ ಾನಿಕ್ಕಾರ್ | | SV III | 39 RI |
| 3.8 | ပြောင်း or <u>Elisians and</u> ဘွေးလောင် ပြောင်း Online Education (CDC) | စာ | O Timiversity m | 4.8.V. |
| 3.9 | Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI \$17 502. | | William I The Control of the Control | 44 |

| 3.10 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 46 | |
|------|--|------------------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|
| 3.11 | ವಾರ್ಯಭಾಗಂಲ್ ನಿ ವ್ಯಾಕಾರಣಾಂಕಾಲು | | | 46 | |
| | | 4. తాతకో నూలు పోగు | | | |
| 4.1 | ఉద్దేశం | | | 47 | |
| 4.2 | కవి పరిచయం | | | 47 | |
| 4.3 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 48 | |
| 4.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 50 | |
| 4.5 | ඉ රුවා | | | 50 | |
| 4.6 | సందర్భ సహిత వ్యాఖ్యలు | | | 51 | |
| | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 52 | |
| 4.8 | ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్న | ာ | | 53 | |
| 4.9 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 54 | |
| 4.10 | విద్యార్దులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 56 | |
| | | యూనిట్ - II : కధానిక | | | |
| | 5. ਢ | కెలుగు కధానిక - పరిచయం | | | |
| 5.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 58 | |
| 5.2 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | | | 58 | |
| 5.3 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు | | | 62 | |
| 5.4 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు | | | 65 | |
| | | 6. భయం (కథ) | | | |
| 6.1 | <u> </u> | | | 67 | |
| 6.2 | రచయిత గురించి | | | 67 | |
| 6.3 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 68 | |
| 6.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 85 | |
| 6.5 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | | | 85 | |
| 6.6 | ప్రశ్న జవాబులు : వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | | 88 | |
| 6.7 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 90 | |
| 6.8 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 92 | |
| | | (7. స్వేదం ఖరీదు) | oce and | | 4. |
| 7.1 | <u> </u> | | Starre | 93 | MA |
| 7.2 | కవి పలిచ్చుం DIRECTOR | | S.V. University | 93 | REGIS |
| 7.3 | ୍କର୍ଗ୍ୟୁକ୍ୟୁନ୍ୟ Distance and Online Education (CDC) | | Tirupati | 93. | V. UNII TIRU |
| 7.4 | Schlenkatesware University PIRUPATI - 517 502. | | Tirupati 2 | 99 | IINU |
| vi |) | | UO! | | _ |
| · | J | | | | |

| 7.5 పాఠ్యభాగం సారాంశం 7.6 వ్యారరూప (ప్రశ్నలు) 7.7 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) 7.8 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యాసం 8.1 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 8.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 8.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 8.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 8.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 8.5 ప్రాగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) 8.6 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యాసం 9.1 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 9.2 రహయత పరిచయం 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 9.5 ప్రాగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) 9.6 ప్రశ్నలు 10. రథపులా - సమీక్ష 10.1 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 10.4 ప్రశ్నలు 10.5 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) 11.1 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 11.1 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.4 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 11.4 ఆడ్డేశ్యం 11.5 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) - జవాబులు 11.5 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నల) - జవాబులు 11.5 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నల) - జవాబులు 11.5 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు) - జవాబులు 11.5 సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ | | | | | |
|---|------|---|---------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 7.7 సంగ్రహ డ్రక్నలు 103 7.8 ఏద్యార్థులకు అఖ్యాసం 104 ద్యూనిట్ - III: నవల 8.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 107 8.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 107 8.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 107 8.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 112 8.4 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 113 8.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 ఏద్యార్థులకు అఖ్యాసం 120 9. రథ చిక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 122 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ సరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.6 ప్రాస్థరాగం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 258 10.1 పాఠ్యభాగం 258 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 258 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 ద్యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం | 7.5 | పాఠ్యభాగం సారాంశం | | | 99 |
| 7.8 ఏద్యార్థులకు అఖ్యానం యూనిట్ - III: నవల 8.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 107 8.2 పార్యభాగం 107 8.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 112 8.4 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 113 8.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 ఏద్యార్థులకు అఖ్యానం 120 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 122 9.4 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 122 9.5 ప్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 223 10.0 రథచక్రాలు - సమీక్ష 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పార్యభాగం 265 11.3 పార్యభాగం 265 11.3 పార్యభాగం | 7.6 | వ్యారరూప (పశ్నలు | | | 101 |
| 8.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 107 8.2 పార్యభాగం 107 8.3 పార్యభాగం 112 8.4 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 113 8.5 వ్యాసరూష ప్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యాసం 120 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 122 9.4 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 122 9.5 వ్యాసరూష ప్రశ్నలు 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూష ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూష ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 మూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పార్యభాగం | 7.7 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 103 |
| 8.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 107 8.2 పార్యభాగం 107 8.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 112 8.4 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 113 8.5 వ్యాసగూప ప్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యానం 120 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిక పరిచయం 121 9.3 పార్యభాగం 122 9.4 పార్యభాగం 122 9.5 హ్యాసగూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.3 11.3 పార్యభాగం 265 11.3 పార్యభాగం 265 11.3 పార్యభాగం 265 | 7.8 | విద్యార్దులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 104 |
| 8.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 107 8.2 పార్యభాగం 1007 8.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 112 8.4 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 113 8.5 వ్యాసరూవ ప్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యాసం 120 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 122 9.4 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 122 9.5 వ్యాసరూవ ప్రశ్నలు 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూవ ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూవ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 మూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పార్యభాగం | | * | యూనిట్ - III: నవల | | |
| 8.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 107 8.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 112 8.4 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 113 8.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యాసం 120 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 | | | 8. తెలుగు నవల - పరిచయం | | |
| 8.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 112 8.4 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 113 8.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 113 8.6 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అభ్యాసం 120 9. రథ చక్రాలు (సవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ సరాంశం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 | 8.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 107 |
| 8.4 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | 8.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 107 |
| 8.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.6 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్థులకు అఖ్యాసం 120 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 మూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం | 8.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 112 |
| 8.6 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు 119 8.7 విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యానం 120 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిక పరిచయం 121 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం | 8.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | | | 113 |
| 8.7 విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యానం 120 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 265 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 265 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 268 | 8.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు | | | 113 |
| 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పార్యభాగం 122 9.4 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు 223 10. రథచక్రాలు - సమీక్ష 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ డ్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 | 8.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 119 |
| 9.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 121 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం 121 9.3 పార్యభాగం 122 9.4 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ సరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పార్యభాగం | 8.7 | విద్యార్దులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 120 |
| 9.2 రచయిత పరిచయం | | * | 9. రథ చక్రాలు (నవల) | | |
| 9.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 122 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప [ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప [ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ [ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 265 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం | 9.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 121 |
| 9.4 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 223 9.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 223 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం | 9.2 | రచయిత పరిచయం | | | 121 |
| 9.5 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు 10. రథచక్రాలు - సమీక్ష 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పార్యభాగం 265 11.3 పార్యభాగం 268 REGIS | 9.3 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 122 |
| 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 265 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 265 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 268 REGIS | 9.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 223 |
| 10.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 253 10.2 పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.5 కండాగాలు రహాంతులు | 9.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు | | | 223 |
| 10.2 పార్యభాగ సారాంశం 253 10.3 పార్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పార్యభాగం 11.3 పార్యభాగం 11.3 పార్యభాగం 11.3 పార్యభాగం 11.3 పార్యభాగం | | | 10. రథచక్రాలు - సమీక్ష | | |
| 10.3 పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం 258 10.4 వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 258 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు – జవాబులు 261 యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.5 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.5 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.6 ప్రామాన్య ప్ర | 10.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 253 |
| 10.4 ລາງກັດຫາລ ຜູລ້ຽງເພ - ຂລາຄົນຄົນ 258 10.5 ກັດເກັລາ ຜູລ້ຽງເພ - ຂລາຄົນຄົນ 261 ຜາການ ເພື່ອງ - ເພື່ | 10.2 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | | | 253 |
| 10.5 సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు - జవాబులు యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 265 265 268 REGIS | 10.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 258 |
| యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 265 265 268 REGIS | 10.4 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు – జవాబుల |) | | 258 |
| యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం 11.1 ఉద్దేశ్యం 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగం 265 268 REGIS | 10.5 | సంగ్రహ (పశ్నలు - జవాబులు | | | 261 |
| 11.1 ස්ධ්ූූ ක්රිය | | | యూనిట్ - IV: నాటకం | | |
| 11.2 పాఠ్యభాగం 11.3 పాఠ్యభాగు 265 (268 REGIS | | | 11. తెలుగు నాటకం - పరిచయం | | |
| 11.2 ລ້າຮູ້ຊາກັດ 11.3 ລ້າຮູ້ຊາກັດລັງຄວາມ 11.4 Control of Distance and Contr | 11.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | ce and | 265 |
| 11.3 Description of the property of the proper | 11.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | sance and on | 265 M |
| 11.4 Centre for Distance and Contine Education (CDC) 11.5 Solding Education (CDC) 11.5 Solding Education (CDC) Tirupati Tirupati Vii | 11.3 | పాఠ్యభాగున్నర్వయం | | S.V IInima | 268 REGIS |
| 11.5 Solventates wara University (Figure 17 502. | 11.4 | Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC) | | Tirupati | 269.V. UNIV |
| vii | 11.5 | Sri Venkateswara University | | THE STATE OF | 272 |
| | | | | * noi | · vii |

| 12. యక్షగానం (నాటిక |) |
|---------------------|---|
|---------------------|---|

| | <u> </u> | |
|------|---|------------|
| 12.1 | <u> </u> | 273 |
| 12.2 | కవి పరిచయం | 273 |
| 12.3 | పాఠ్యభాగం | 274 |
| 12.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 298 |
| 12.5 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | 299 |
| 12.6 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు (పశ్నలు – జవాబులు | 300 |
| 12.7 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | 311 |
| 12.8 | ವಿದ್ <u>စ</u> ာర్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | 314 |
| | 13. అపురూప కళారూపాల విధ్వంస దృశ్యం యక్షగానం | |
| 13.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | 315 |
| 13.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | 315 |
| 13.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 320 |
| 13.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | 320 |
| 13.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు – జవాబులు | 322 |
| 13.6 | విద్యార్ధలకు అభ్యాసం | 326 |
| | యూనిట్ - V: విమర్శ | |
| | $\Big[14.$ తెలుగు సాహిత్య విమర్శ – పరిచయం $\Big]$ | |
| 14.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | 329 |
| 14.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | 329 |
| 14.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | 334 |
| 14.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | 334 |
| 14.5 | (పశ్నలు – జవాబులు (వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు) | 334 |
| 14.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | 339 |
| 14.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | 342 |
| | [15. విమర్శ – స్వరూప స్వభావాలు] | |
| 15.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | 343 |
| 15.2 | పాఠ్వభాగం | 343 |
| 15.3 | ಪ್ರಾಕ್ಸ್ ಪರಿಪ್ರಯಂ ನ್ಯಾಕ್ಸ್ ಪರಿಪ್ರಯಂ ನ್ಯಾಕ್ಸ್ ಪ್ರಾಕ್ಸ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರಾಕ್ಸ್ ಪ್ರವಕ್ಷ್ಣ ಪ್ರತ್ತ ಪ್ರವಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರಾಕ್ಸ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಕ್ಕ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ಟ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ್ರ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ತ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ಟ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ಟ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ಟ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ಟ್ ಪ್ರವ್ ಪ್ರವಾಸ್ಟ್ | 346 |
| 15.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం వ్యాసర్మాడ్ ప్రశ్నాణ స్వాహింగ్లో ప్రశ్నాణ స్వాహింగ్లో కార్మాడ్లు మండ్రికి మండ | 346 M |
| 15.5 | వ్యాసర్మా ప్రశ్నమ్మ స్ట్రామ్ స్టామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్టాన్ స్టామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్టాన్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్టాన్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్టాన్ స్ట్రామ్ స్ట్రామ్ స్టాన్ స | 347 REGIST |
| 15.6 | Contro for Distance and Online Education (CDC) | 350 TIRUP |
| 15.7 | Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDC) Sit Ventateswara University Distance and Tirrupati Tirrupati Tirrupati Tirrupati | 352 |
| viii |) * nois | |

సృజనాత్మక రచన

డిగ్రీ (జనరల్) / సెమిస్టర్ - III

రచయితలు

යාා ඩී. මණි්්

డాగ్రై ఎస్. సునీల్ కుమార్

ತಲುಗು ವಿಭಾಗಂ ఎస్. వి. విశ్వ విద్యాలయం తిరుపతి, ఆంధ్ర్రపదేశ్ - 517 502



Centre for Distance and Online Education

rivenkateswara Univers Tirupati

Online Education (CDG®) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP-517 50

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.





Centre for Distance and Online Education

Contro for Distance and Venkateswara University University Tirupati Online Education (CDC(2)

Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -517 502



జనరల్ తెలుగు / సెమిస్టర్ - III

సృజనాత్మక రచన

అభ్యసన ఫలితాలు

ఈ కోర్సు విజయవంతం ముగించాక, విద్యార్థులు క్రింది అభ్యసన ఫలితాలను పొందగలరు.

- తెలుగు సాహిత్య అభ్యసన ద్వారా నేర్చుకున్న నెపుణ్యాలను, సృజనాత్మక నైపుణ్యాలుగా మార్చుకోగలరు. 1.
- విద్యార్థులు భాషాతత్వాన్ని, భాష యొక్క ఆవశ్యకతను, భాష యొక్క ప్రాధాన్యాన్ని గుర్తిస్తారు. మనిషి వృక్తిగత జీవనానికి, సామాజిక వ్యవస్థ పటిష్టతకు భాష ప్రధానమని తెలుసుకుంటారు.
 - తెలుగుభాషలోని కీలకాంశాలైన 'వర్ణం-పదం-వాక్యా'ల ప్రాధాన్నాన్ని గుర్తిస్తూ, వాగ్రూప- రిఖితరూప వ్యక్తీకరణ ద్వారా భాషానైపుణ్యాలను మొరుగుపరచుకోగలరు.
- భాషానైపుణ్యాలను అలవరుచుకోవడంతోపాటు వినియోగించడం నేర్చుకుంటారు. రచనా, భాషణానైపుణ్యాలను 3. సృజనాత్మక రూపంలో వ్యక్తీకరించగలరు.
- ప్రాచీన పద్యరచనతో పాటు ఆధునిక కవిత, కథ, వ్యాసం మొదలైన సాహిత్యప్రక్రియల నిర్మాణాలకు సంబంధించిన 4. సిద్ధాంతవిషయాలను నేర్పడంతో పాటు వారిలో రచనా నైపుణ్యాలను పెంపొందించుకోగలరు.
- సృజన రంగర, ప్రసారమాధ్యమ రంగాల్లో ఉపాధి అవకాశాలను అందిపుచ్చుకోగలరు. 5.
- అనువాద రంగంలో నైపుణ్యం సంపాదించగలరు. 6.

పాఠ్య ప్రణాళిక

యూనిట్ - 1: వ్యక్తీకరణ నైపుణ్యం

భాషా ప్రాథమిక అంశాలు (భాష– నిర్వచనం, లక్షణాలు, ఆవశ్యకత ప్రయోజనాలు) 1.

(లక్షణాలు, సామాన్య - సంయుక్త - సంశ్లిష్ట వాక్యాలు) 2. వర్దం, పదం, వాక్యం

3. భాషా నిర్మాణంలో వర్ణం, పదం, వాక్యం

యూనిట్ - II : సృజనాత్మక రచనలు

4. కవిత్రార్జ్రవన

DIRECTOR
CONTROL TO CONTROL OF THE C

5. Online Education (CDC(2)

Satisfikaties wara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. 6.

ఉత్తమ కవితా – లక్షణాలు

ఉత్తమ కథ – లక్షణాలు

ఉత్తమ వ్యాసం లక్షణాలు





యూనిట్ - III: అనువాద రచన

- 7. అనువాదం నిర్వచనం, అనువాద పద్ధతులు
- 8. అనువాద సమస్యలు భౌగోళిక, భాషా, సంస్కృతిక సమస్యలు, పరిష్కారాలు
- 9. అభ్యాసం ఆంగ్లం నుండి తెలుగుకు, తెలుగు నుండి ఆంగ్లానికి ఒక పేరును అనువదించడం

యూనిట్ - IV: మాధ్యమాలకు రచన - 1 (ముద్రణామాధ్యమం/ ట్రింట్ మీడియా)

- 10. ముద్రణామాధ్యమం: పరిచయం పరిధి వికాసం
- 11. వివిధ రకాల పత్రికలు , పరిశీలన పత్రికా భాష శైలి వైవిధ్యం
- 12. పత్రికా రచన : (వార్తా రచన, సంపాదకీయాలు, సమీక్షలు అవగాహన)

యూనిట్ - ${f V}$: మాధ్యమాల రచన - 2 (ప్రసార మాధ్యమం/ ఎల|క్టానిక్ మీడియా)

- 13. ట్రసార మాధ్యమాలు : (నిర్వచనం,రకాలు, విస్తృతి ట్రయోజనాలు)
- 14. డ్రవణ మాధ్యమాలు : (రచన, రేడియో రచన, ప్రసంగాలు, నాటికలు, ప్రసార సమాచారం)
- 15. దృశ్య మాధ్యమాలు : (రచన, వ్యాఖ్యానం(యాంకరింగ్), టెలివిజన్ రచన)

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC:
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





^{విషయ సూచిక} సృజనాత్మక రచన

| | | యూనిట్ - 1: వ్యక్తీకరణ నైపుణ్యం | |
|-----|--|---|------|
| 1 1 | 4 . / | 1. భాషా ప్రాథమిక అంశాలు | 2 |
| 1.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | 3 |
| 1.2 | <u>ವ</u> ಾಠ್ಯಭಾಗಂ | | 3 |
| 1.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | 10 |
| 1.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | 10 |
| 1.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | 12 |
| 1.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | 14 |
| | | (2. వర్ణం, పదం, వాక్యం) | |
| 2.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | 17 |
| 2.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | 17 |
| 2.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | 21 |
| 2.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | 21 |
| 2.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | 21 |
| 2.6 | సంగ్రహ (పశ్నలు | | 23 |
| | | 3. భాషా నిర్మాణంలో వర్ణం, పదం, వాక్యం | |
| 3.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | , | 25 |
| 3.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | 25 |
| 3.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | 32 |
| 3.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | 32 |
| 3.5 | వ్యాసరూప (ప్రశ్నలు | | 32 |
| 3.6 | సంగ్రహ (ప్రశ్నలు | | 38 |
| 3.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | 42 |
| | - 4 | యూనిట్ - II : సృజనాత్మక రచనలు | |
| | | 4. కవితా రచన (S.V. University Tirupati | |
| 4.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | 45 |
| 4.2 | ప్రార్థ్య DISECTOR Centre for Distance and | $\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \left\langle S.V. U_{niversity} \right\rangle_{i=1}^{n} \right)$ | 48.V |
| 4.3 | Opline Education (CDC®) Srivenkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. | Tirupati | 48 |

| 4.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 48 | |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|----|--------|
| 4.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు | | | 49 | |
| 4.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 52 | |
| | | 5. కథారచన | | | |
| 5.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 55 | |
| 5.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 55 | |
| 5.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 60 | |
| 5.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 61 | |
| 5.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు | | | 61 | |
| 5.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 66 | |
| 5.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 70 | |
| | | 6. వ్యాస రచన | | | |
| 6.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 55 | |
| 6.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 55 | |
| 6.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 60 | |
| 6.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 61 | |
| 6.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | | 61 | |
| 6.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 66 | |
| 6.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 70 | |
| 6.8 | ු කින්න ක්රී | | | 80 | |
| | | యూనిట్ - III: అనువాద రచన | | | |
| | | 7. అనువాదం | | | |
| 7.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 83 | |
| 7.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 83 | |
| 7.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 86 | |
| 7.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 86 | |
| 7.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు | | | 86 | |
| 7.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | ace and | 91 | 4 1 1 |
| 7.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం 🗼 | | Stall | 92 | MA |
| | DIRECTOR | 8. అనువాద సమస్యలు | S.V. University | | REGIST |
| 8.1 | Centre for Distance and | | Tirupati) | 93 | TIRUP |
| 8.2 | Sri Venkateswara University | | Tirupati E | 93 | |
| vi |) | | * 110: | | |

| 8.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 104 |
|--------------|--|--|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 8.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 104 |
| 8.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | | 104 |
| 8.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 117 |
| 8.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 118 |
| | | 9. అభ్యాసం | | |
| 9.1 | ఉద్దేశం | | | 119 |
| 9.2 | ఆంగ్లం నుండి తెలుగుకు అనువాద | గం చేయుట | | 119 |
| 9.3 | తెలుగు నుండి ఆంగ్లంకు అనువాద | గం చేయుట | | 120 |
| 9.4 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 120 |
| | యూనిట్ - IV: మాధ్యవ | ాలకు రచన - 1 (ముద్రణామా | ధ్యమం/ ట్రింట్ మీడియా) | |
| | | 10. ముద్రణామాధ్యమం | | |
| 10.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | | 123 |
| 10.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 123 |
| 10.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 126 |
| 10.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 126 |
| 10.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | | 127 |
| 10.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 129 |
| 10.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | | 130 |
| | | ි 11. | | |
| 11.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | , | 131 |
| 11.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | | 131 |
| 11.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | | 137 |
| 11.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | | 138 |
| 11.5 | వ్యాసరూప (ప్రశ్నలు | | | 138 |
| 11.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | | 142 |
| 11.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | ce and | 144 |
| 12.1 12.2 | ස්ධූ් නිලා DIRECTOR බණුණුණ Mo Distance and | (12. పట్రికా రచన) | S.V. University Tirupati | 145 REGIS 1 8.V. UNI |
| 12.3 | Online Education (CDC ි) මාත්රයෝමණමණ්ඩලාලrsity TIRUPATI - 517 502. | | Tirupati E | 149 TIR U |

| 12.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | 149 |
|------|---|---|---------------------------------|
| 12.5 | వ్యాసరూప (పశ్నలు | | 150 |
| 12.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | 152 |
| 12.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | 154 |
| | యూనిట్ - V: మాధ్యమా | ల రచన - 2 (ప్రసార మాధ్యమం/ ఎలక్ష్వానిక్ మీడియా) | |
| | | 13. ట్రసార మాధ్యమాలు | |
| 13.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | 157 |
| 13.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | 157 |
| 13.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | 159 |
| 13.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశము | | 159 |
| 13.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | 159 |
| 13.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | 161 |
| 13.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | 162 |
| | | 14. శ్రవణ మాధ్యమాలు | |
| 14.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | 163 |
| 14.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | 163 |
| 14.3 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | 170 |
| 14.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | | 170 |
| 14.5 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | | 170 |
| 14.6 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | | 175 |
| 14.7 | విద్యార్ధులకు అభ్యాసం | | 176 |
| | · | 15. దృశ్య మాధ్యమాలు | |
| 15.1 | ఉద్దేశ్యం | | 177 |
| 15.2 | పాఠ్యభాగం | | 177 |
| 15.3 | యాంకరకు ఉండాల్సిన లక్షణాలు | | 182 |
| 15.4 | పాఠ్యభాగ పరిచయం | | 184 |
| 15.5 | పాఠ్యభాగ సారాంశం | | 184 |
| 15.6 | వ్యాసరూప ప్రశ్నలు | ce and | 184 |
| 15.7 | సంగ్రహ ప్రశ్నలు | stance and on | 191 |
| 15.8 | ව්ධාර්තම මහා හිට DIRECTOR Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDO) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502. | S.V. University Tirupati | 192 REGIS 8.V. UNIV TIRUF |
| viii |) | 3 * 110: | |

A Course in Communication and Soft Skills

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
For Degree I-Year/I-sem
Common to all Branches

Authors
Prof. V. Ravi Naidu
Dr. E. Gangadhar
Dr. A. Sreenivasulu
Dept. of English

S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Srike enkateswara University

Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -517



All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.





Centre for Distance and Online Laucation DIRECTOR Sri Venkateswara University Tirupati

Online Education (CDOS) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -517 50



A Course in Communication and Soft Skills

Learning Outcomes

By the end of the course the learner will be able to:

- Use grammar effectively in writing and speaking.
- Demonstrate the use of good vocabulary
- Demonstrate an understating of writing skills
- Acquire ability to use Soft Skills in professional and daily life.
- Confidently use the tools of communication skills

Unit-1: Listening Skills

- i. Importance of Listening
- ii. Types of Listening
- iii. Barriers to Listening
- iv. Effective Listening

Unit-2: Speaking Skills

- a. Sounds of English: Vowels and Consonants
- b. Word Accent
- c. Intonation

Unit-3: Grammar

- a. Concord
- b. Modals
- c. Tenses (Present/Past/Future)
- d. Articles
- e. Prepositions
- f. Question Tags
- g. Sentence Transformation (Voice, Reported Speech & Degrees of Comparison)
- h. Error Correction

Unit-4: Writing

- i. Punctuation
- ii. Spelling
- iii. Paragraph Writing

Unit-5: Soft Skills

- a. SWOC
- b. Attitude (,)
- c. Emotional Intelligence
- d. Telephoretiquene
- e. Interprepanals kills





Content

A Course in Communication and Soft Skills

| | Unit-1: Listening skills | |
|------|---|--------|
| 1.0 | Objectives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Listening Skills | 1 |
| 1.2 | Importance | 2 |
| | 1.2.1 Importance of Listening Skills | 3 |
| | 1.2.2 Ways to Improve Listening Skill | 3 |
| 1.3 | Techniques to Improve Listening | 4 |
| | 1.3.1 Characteristics associated with the Speaker and Listener | 4 |
| 1.4 | Process or Stages of Listening | 5 |
| 1.5 | Listening Modes | 6 |
| | 1.5.1 Advantages of Listening | 7 |
| | 1.5.2 Poor Listening Habits | 8 |
| | 1.5.3 Good Listening Habits | 8 |
| 1.6 | Types of Listening | 9 |
| 1.7 | Barriers To Listening | 12 |
| 1.8 | Effectiveness of Listening | 14 |
| | 1.8.1 Strategies for Effective Listening | 16 |
| 1.9 | Listening Comprehension | 17 |
| | 1.9.1 Listening to Sounds: Sounds of English Language | 18 |
| 1.10 | Exercises | 19 |
| 1.11 | Check your Progress | 21 |
| 1.12 | Outcomes | 21 |
| 1.13 | Exercise | 22 |
| 1.14 | Practice Exercises | 22 |
| | (Unit-2: Speaking Skills) | |
| 2.0 | Objectives | 25 |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 25 |
| 2.2 | Essentials Of Effective Speaking Skills | 26 M |
| | Introduction Essentials Of Effective Speaking Skills 2.2.1 Principles of Speaking Skills 2.2.2 Distribution Speaking Skills 2.2.2 Distribution Speaking Skills | 27 |
| | Control for Dictorion and | 28 REG |
| 2.3 | | 29 TIR |
| | Srl Venkateswara University 2.3 TRUPATION TRUPATION TO Speaking Skills | 30 |
| | | |

| 2.4 | Sounds of English | 30 |
|------|---|------------|
| 2.5 | Introduction To Phonetics | 31 |
| | 2.5.1 The Sounds of English | 32 |
| | 2.5.2 Task | 33 |
| 2.6 | Vowels | 34 |
| | 2.6.1 Pure Vowels or Monophthongs | 35 |
| | 2.6.2 Tasks | 40 |
| | 2.6.3 Diphthongs | 42 |
| | 2.6.4 Tasks | 47 |
| 2.7 | Consonants | 48 |
| | 2.7.1 Double Consonant Letters | 56 |
| | 2.7.2 Tasks | 58 |
| 2.8 | Word Accent | 60 |
| | 2.8.1 Importance of Stress | 61 |
| | 2.8.2 Aspects of Word Stress | 61 |
| | 2.8.3 Rules of Word Stress | 63 |
| | 2.8.4 Stress Shift According to Function | 67 |
| | 2.8.4 Stress Shift According to Function | 67 |
| | 2.8.5 Stress in Compound Words | 67 |
| 2.9 | Tasks | 68 |
| 2.10 | Accent/Stress and Rhythm in Connected Speech | 69 |
| | 2.10.1 Rhythm in Connected Speech | 70 |
| | 2.10.2 Strong/Weak Forms and Contracted Forms | 71 |
| 2.11 | Tasks | 74 |
| 2.12 | Intonation | 75 |
| | 2.12.1 Objective Factors | 76 |
| | 2.12.2 Tone Groups | 76 |
| | 2.12.3 Some Important Points to be Remembered | 80 |
| 2.13 | Tasks | 81 |
| 2.14 | Outcomes | 81 |
| 2.15 | Check Out | 81 |
| | Objectives Importance of Grammarq Concordector Contro for Distance and 300ilho Edicatesn GP Concord | |
| 3.0 | Objectives Importance of Grammarq Concordector S.V. University | 83 // |
| 3.1 | Importance of Grammarq | 84 REGIST |
| 3.2 | Concentration Centre for Distance and | 84.V. UNIV |
| | Schle Edulus ISP Concord Schle Edulus ISP Concord Schlenkateswara University | 85 TIRUP |
| | 3.2 TRUPATOUR JOE Proximity | 88 |
| | 3 * 1103 | v |

| | 3.2.3 | The Basics of Subject-Verb Concord | | 89 |
|-----|----------|--|--------------------------|------------|
| | 3.2.4 | Tasks | | 90 |
| | 3.2.5 | Check Out | | 93 |
| 3.3 | Modals | S | | 94 |
| | 3.3.1 | List of Modal Verbs | | 94 |
| | 3.3.2 | Tasks | | 99 |
| | 3.3.3 | Check Out | | 101 |
| 3.4 | Tenses | (Present/ Past/ Future) | | 102 |
| | 3.4.1 | Present Tense | | 103 |
| | 3.4.2 | Past Tense | | 105 |
| | 3.4.3 | Future Tense | | 106 |
| | 3.4.4 | Tasks | | 108 |
| | 3.4.5 | Check Out | | 113 |
| 3.5 | Article | S | | 121 |
| | 3.5.1 | The Definite Article | | 122 |
| | 3.5.2 | The Indefinite Article | | 122 |
| | 3.5.3 | Indefinite articles with Incountable Nouns | | 123 |
| | 3.5.4 | Uses of Article 'a' | | 124 |
| | 3.5.5 | Uses of Article 'an' | | 125 |
| | 3.5.6 | Omission of Articles/Zero Article | | 125 |
| | 3.5.7 | Use of the Definite Article 'the' | | 127 |
| | 3.5.8 | Omission of the Article 'the' | | 128 |
| | 3.5.9 | Task | | 129 |
| | 3.5.10 | Check Out | | 132 |
| 3.6 | Prepos | itions | | 136 |
| | 3.6.1 | Types of Prepositions | | 136 |
| | 3.6.2 | Unnecessary Prepositions | | 138 |
| | 3.6.3 | Other Uses of Preposition | | 138 |
| | 3.6.4 | Task (GATE 2018) | | 139 |
| | 3.6.5 | Check Out | | 142 |
| 3.7 | Questi | on Tags | | 144 |
| | 3.7.1 | Positive or Negative Question Tags | | 144 |
| | 3.7.2 | Intonation | S.V. University Tirupati | 146 |
| | 3.7.3 | Tone Groups \ | S.V. University | 148 |
| | | Programme Points to be Remembered | S.V. University | 150 REGIST |
| | 3 Centre | for Distance and Education (CDC:) | Tirupati | 151 TIRUP |
| | | teswara University | o Inapati | 153 TIKUP |

| 3.8 | Reported | 1 Speech | 155 | |
|------|--------------------------|--|-----|---------|
| | 3.8.1 I | Direct and Indirect Speech | 155 | |
| | 3.8.2 | Converting Direct Speech into Indirect Speech | 157 | |
| | 3.8.3 F | Rules for Reported Speech | 157 | |
| | 3.8.4 | Tasks Tasks | 166 | |
| | 3.8.5 | Check Out | 168 | |
| 3.9 | Active a | nd Passive Voice | 169 | |
| | 3.9.1 V | When to use Active and Passive Voice | 169 | |
| | 3.9.2 A | Active to Passive Voice Rules For Conversion of Sentence | 170 | |
| | 3.9.3 | Tasks Tasks | 173 | |
| | 3.9.4 | Check Out | 184 | |
| 3.10 | Degree o | of Comparison | 187 | |
| | 3.10.1 F | Rules for Changing the Degrees of Comparison | 190 | |
| | 3.10.2 I | Degrees of Comparison are Applicable only to Adjectives and Adverbs | 192 | |
| | 3.10.3 F | Rules for Adjectives and Adverbs in Degrees of Comparison | 194 | |
| | 3.10.4 | Tasks | 198 | |
| 3.11 | Outcome | es | 200 | |
| | | Unit-4: Writing | | |
| 4.0 | Objective | es | 201 | |
| 4.1 | Introduct | tion | 201 | |
| 4.2 | Significa | ance Of Writing | 203 | |
| | 4.2.1 S | Spelling | 204 | |
| 4.3 | Tasks (S | SC Codes) | 207 | |
| 4.4 | Punctuat | ion | 212 | |
| | 4.4.1 T | Task Task | 216 | |
| 4.5 | Paragrap | oh Writing | 217 | |
| | 4.5.1 | Organising Principles of Paragraph Writing | 218 | |
| | 4.5.2 F | Paragraph Development Techniques and Methods | 220 | |
| | 4.5.3 | Types of Paragraphs | 222 | |
| | 4.5.4 | Tasks | 223 | |
| 4.6 | Outcome | es | 224 | |
| 4.7 | Check O | Out | 224 | |
| | | Unit-5: Soft Skills es Control Contr | | MA |
| 5.0 | Objectiv | es Till | 229 | |
| 5.1 | Introduct | FOTOR (S.V. University) | 220 | KEGIS I |
| | 50hlihe Ed | r Distance and dentionit (NOTKs | 230 | TIRUP |
| | Sri Venkate 5.1 TRUPA | with the state of | 230 | |
| | | work work | | 1 |
| | | | vii | |

| | 5.1.3 | Soft Skills List and Examples | 231 |
|-----|---------------------|--|------------|
| | 5.1.4 | Improvement of Soft Skills | 232 |
| | 5.1.5 | Highlight your Soft Skills | 233 |
| 5.2 | SWO | | 234 |
| | 5.2.1 | Personal SWOT Analysis | 235 |
| | 5.2.2 | SWOT Questions to Ask Yourself | 237 |
| | 5.2.3 | Determining the Outcomes | 238 |
| | 5.2.4 | Taking Action | 238 |
| | 5.2.5 | Why do A Personal SWOT Analysis? | 238 |
| | 5.2.6 | When Should you Perform a Personal SWOT Analysis | 241 |
| 5.3 | Attitud | le | 242 |
| | 5.3.1 | Definition of Attitude | 242 |
| | 5.3.2 | Components of Attitude | 244 |
| | 5.3.3 | Factors Influencing Attitude | 246 |
| | 5.3.4 | Differences between Attitude and Behaviour | 247 |
| | 5.3.5 | Differences between Attitude and Behavior | 248 |
| | 5.3.6 | Attitude at Workplace | 248 |
| | 5.3.7 | Effects of Positive Attitude | 249 |
| | 5.3.8 | Effects of Negative Attitude | 250 |
| 5.4 | Emotio | onal Intelligence | 251 |
| | 5.4.1 | The 4 Dimensions of Emotional Intelligence (and a Chart) | 253 |
| | 5.4.2 | Key Skills in the Emotional Intelligence Framework | 254 |
| | 5.4.3 | Emotional Intelligence, IQ, and Personality Are Different | 255 |
| | 5.4.4 | Emotional Intelligence Is Linked to Performance | 256 |
| | 5.4.5 | Emotional Intelligence Can Be Developed | 257 |
| 5.5 | Teleph | none Etiquette | 259 |
| | 5.5.1 | Essential Rules of Phone Etiquette | 261 |
| | 5.5.2 | Customer Service Phone Etiquette | 263 |
| | 5.5.3 | Ways to Improve Your Telephone Etiquette | 265 |
| 5.6 | Interpe | ersonal Skills | 266 |
| | 5.6.1 U | Understanding Interpersonal Skills | 266 |
| | 5.6.2 I | mportance of Interpersonal Skills | 267 |
| | 5.6.3 H | mportance of Interpersonal Skills How to Improve Interpersonal Skills State of Skills when Applying for John | 268 |
| | 5.6.41 | ingering interpersonal Skins when Applying for Jobs (£ / 5, V. University) \(\text{V} \) | 268 REGIST |
| 5.7 | CHIE | Mes-view (choir) | 269 TIRUP |
| 5.8 | Sri Venk Intervi | ateswara University | 270 |

A Course in **Reading & Writing Skills**

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS) For Degree I-year / II-sem Common to all Branches

Authors
Prof. V. Ravi Naidu
Dr. E. Gangadhar
Dr. A. Sreenivasulu
Dept. of English
S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education

Srike enkateswara University

Online Education (CDO®)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -517

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education

DIRECTOR STI Venkateswara University University Online Education (CDCC) Tirupathi, AP -517 502

TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Tirupati

A Course in Reading & Writing Skills

Learning Outcomes

By the end of the course the learner will be able to:

- Use reading skills effectively
- Comprehend different texts
- Interpret different types of texts
- Analyse what is being read
- Build up a repository of active vocabulary
- Use good writing strategies
- Write well for any purpose
- Improve writing skills independently for future needs

Unit-1

Prose: 1. How to Avoid Foolish Opinions Bertrand Russell

Skills: 2. Vocabulary: Conversion of Words

: 3. One Word Substitutes

: 4. Collocations

Unit-2

Prose Katherine Mansfield : 1. The Doll's House

: 2. Ode to the West Wind **Poetry** P B Shelley

Non-Detailed Text : 3. Florence Nightingale Abrar Mohsin

Skills : 4. Skimming and Scanning

Unit-3

: 1. The Night Train at Deoli Ruskin Bond Prose

Poetry): 2. Upagupta Rabindranath Tagore

Skills Centre for Disarcating Comprehension Online Education (CDO2)

Sri Venkateswara Universi Making/Taking





Unit-4

Poetry : 1. Coromandel Fishers Sarojini Naidu

Skills : 2. Expansion of Ideas

: 3. Notices, Agendas and Minutes

(Unit-5)

Non-Detailed Text : 1. An Astrologer's Day R K Narayan

Skills : 2. Curriculum Vitae and Resume

: 3. Letters

: 4. E-Correspondence

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





Content

A Course in Reading & Writing Skills

| | Unit-1 | | | | |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|--|--|--|
| 1.0 | Objective | 2 | | | |
| 1.1 | How to Avoid Foolish Opinions | 2 | | | |
| 1.2 | Conversion | 4 | | | |
| | 1.2.1 Exercises | 7 | | | |
| | 1.2.2 Practice Exercises | 9 | | | |
| 1.3 | Collocation | 11 | | | |
| | 1.3.1 Types of Collocations | 12 | | | |
| | 1.3.2 Exercises | 15 | | | |
| | 1.3.3 Practice Exercises | 18 | | | |
| 1.4 | One-Word Substitutes | 21 | | | |
| | 1.4.1 Exercises | 33 | | | |
| | 1.4.2 Practice Exercises | 36 | | | |
| 1.5 | Outcomes | 40 | | | |
| | (Unit-2) | | | | |
| 2.0 | Objective | 42 | | | |
| 2.1 | The Doll's House Katherine Mansfield | 42 | | | |
| 2.2 | Ode to the West Wind | 48 | | | |
| 2.3 | Florence Nightingale Abrar Mohsin | 53 | | | |
| 2.4 | Skimming and Scanning | 59 | | | |
| | 2.4.1 Skimming Reading for the Gist of a Text | 59 | | | |
| | 2.4.2 Practice Exercises | 62 | | | |
| | 2.4.3 Scanning | 69 | | | |
| | 2.4.4 Practice Exercises | 71 | | | |
| 2.5 | Outcomes | 74 | | | |
| | Unit-3 | 74 Skance and Online 76 REGI | | | |
| 3.0 | Objective | 76 REGI | | | |
| 3.1 | Then to be present an Deoli Ruskin Bond Online Education (CDC.) | 1 5 1 0. V. Universit. | | | |
| 3.2 | Chille Education (CDC) | Tirupati 82 TIRI | | | |
| | - HINOTAIL - 011 004. | 82 WOLLD 82 | | | |

| 3.3 | Readii | ng e | 88 |
|-----|--------|--|-----------------|
| | 3.3.1 | Practice Exercises | 95 |
| 3.4 | Note N | Making/Taking | 111 |
| | 3.4.1 | Note Making Format | 112 |
| | | 3.4.1.1 The Procedure of Note Making | 112 |
| | | 3.4.1.2 Points to Remember for Note Making Format | 113 |
| | 3.4.2 | Importance of Note Taking | 113 |
| | 3.4.3 | Purposes of NoteTaking | 113 |
| | 3.4.4 | Note Making vs Note Taking | 114 |
| 3.5 | Metho | ds of Note Taking | 114 |
| | 3.5.1 | Note Taking Methods | 115 |
| | 3.5.2 | Outline Method | 116 |
| | 3.5.3 | Cornell Method | 117 |
| | 3.5.4 | Boxing/sentence Method | 119 |
| | 3.5.5 | Charting Method | 119 |
| | 3.5.6 | Mapping Method | 120 |
| | 3.5.7 | Steps for Effective Notetaking | 121 |
| 3.6 | Effect | ive NoteTaking for Listening to Lectures | 124 |
| | 3.6.1 | Suggestions for Efficient Notetaking | 124 |
| | 3.6.2 | Steps for Effective Note Making | 127 |
| | 3.6.3 | Methods of Note Making | 128 |
| | | 3.6.3.1 Sequential or Linear Note-Making | 128 |
| | | 3.6.3.2 Pattern of Note-Making or Mind-Mapping | 129 |
| | | 3.6.3.3 Fishbone Diagram | 129 |
| | 3.6.4 | Other Systems of Notemaking | 130 |
| 3.6 | Revie | w Questions | 131 |
| 3.7 | Outco | mes | 132 |
| | | (T. 1. 4) | |
| 4.0 | Object | tive S.V. University | 134 / |
| 4.1 | Introd | action | 134 REGIS |
| 4.2 | _ | Stor Distance and Comments (Comments of the Comments of the Co | 1.8.V. UNI |
| 4.3 | | ateswara University Proverb Expansion | 137 TIRU |
| Vi | | * no;* | |
| VI | | | |

| | 4.3.1 | How to Write a Proverb Expansion or Expansion of an idea | 137 |
|-----|----------------------|---|--------------------|
| | 4.3.2 | Expansion of Ideas of some Famous proverbs and Idioms | 139 |
| | 4.3.3 | Practice Exerises | 142 |
| 4.4 | Notice | es, Agendas and Minutes | 143 |
| | 4.4.1 | Notice | 143 |
| | | 4.4.1.1 Notice of a Meeting | 143 |
| | | 4.4.1.2 Important Tips and Guidelines | 144 |
| | | 4.4.1.3 Format / Template of Notice Writing | 144 |
| | | 4.4.1.4 Specimen Notice | 145 |
| | 4.4.2 | Agenda | 146 |
| | | 4.4.2.1 Some Guidelines for Listing the Items below | 147 |
| | | 4.4.2.2 Importance / Necessity of Agenda | 148 |
| | | 4.4.2.3 Specimen Agendas | 149 |
| | 4.4.3 | Minutes of the Meeting | 149 |
| | | 4.4.3.1 Tips for Writing Minutes | 150 |
| | | 4.4.3.2 Format of Meeting Minutes | 151 |
| | | 4.4.3.3 Specimen of Minutes | 153 |
| | 4.4.4 | Difference between Agenda and Minutes | 155 |
| 4.5 | Sampl | e Meeting Notice, Agenda, and Minutes | 155 |
| 4.6 | Outco | mes | 157 |
| 4.7 | Review | w Questions | 158 |
| | | Unit-5 | |
| 5.0 | Object | ive | 160 |
| 5.1 | Introdu | action | 160 |
| | 5.1.1 | Characterisation Notes | 166 |
| | 5.1.2 | Narrative Techniques | 167 |
| | 5.1.3 | Figurative Language | 167 |
| | 5.1.4 | Societal Satire Astrology as a Profession | 168 |
| | 5.1.5 | Astrology as a Profession | 168 M |
| 5.2 | Resun | Astrology as a Profession Sections Top Distance and Sections Top Distance and | 168 REGIS 1 |
| | | fer Distance and Education Cocontents | 168 TIRUP |
| | Sri Venk 5.2 TIRU | ateswara University parties Printerence between C.V and Resume | 169 |
| | | | |

vii

| | 5.2.3 | Steps in Preparation of Resume | 170 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|--|-----|
| | 5.2.4 | Hard vs. Soft Skills: What's the Difference? | 175 |
| 5.3 | Letter ' | Writing | 181 |
| | 5.3.1 | Types of Letters | 183 |
| | 5.3.2 | Essentials of Effective Letter Writing | 188 |
| | 5.3.3 | Types of Letter Format | 190 |
| | 5.3.4 | Types of Business Letters | 196 |
| | 5.3.5 | Writing a Complaint Letter | 200 |
| | 5.3.6 | Writing an Apology Letter | 202 |
| | 5.3.7 | Writing a Letter of Appeal | 203 |
| 5.35.4 | 5.3.8 | Writing an Invitation Letter | 204 |
| | 5.3.9 | Writing a Resignation Letter | 205 |
| | 5.3.10 | Writing a Letter of Recommendation | 207 |
| | 5.3.11 | Exercises | 208 |
| | 5.3.12 | Practice Exercises | 213 |
| 5.4 | Email Writing | | 214 |
| | 5.4.1 | Significance of Email | 215 |
| | 5.4.2 | Elements of E-mails | 216 |
| | 5.4.3 | Technique for Writing an E-mail | 216 |
| | 5.4.4 | Types of Emails | 217 |
| | 5.4.5 | Advantages of Email | 220 |
| | 5.4.6 | Disadvantages of E-mail | 221 |
| | 5.4.7 | Exercises | 222 |
| 5.5 | Reviev | v Questions | 223 |
| 5.6 | Outcor | mes | 224 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.





A Course in Conversational Skills

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS) For Degree I - Year / III - Semester Common to all Branches

Authors
Prof. V. Ravi Naidu
Dr. E. Gangadhar
Dr. A. Sreenivasulu
Dept. of English
S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP





Online Education (CDO©) Sri Venkateswara University TIRUPATI - 517 502.

Tirupathi, AP -517 §

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director

Centre for Distance and Online Education

DIRECTOR STI Venkateswara University University

Online Education (CDCC) Tirupathi, AP -517 502

TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Tirupati

A Course in Conversational Skiils

Learning Outcomes

By the end of the course the learner will be able to:

- Speak fluently in English
- Participate confidently in any social interaction
- Face any professional discourse
- Demonstrate critical thinking
- Enhance conversational skills by observing the professional interviews

Unit-I

Speech: 1. Tryst with Destiny Jawaharlal Nehru

Skills: 2. Greetings

3. Introductions

Unit-II

Speech: 1. Yes, We Can Barack Obama

Interview: 2. A Leader Should Know How to Manage Failure Dr.A.P.J.Abdul Kalam/ India

Knowledge at Wharton

Skills: 3. Requests

Unit-III

Interview: 1. Nelson Mandela's Interview With Larry King

Skills: 2. Asking and Giving Information

3. Agreeing and Disagreeing

Unit-IV

Interview: 1. JRD Tata's Interview With T.N.Ninan

Skills: 2. Dialogue Building

3. Giving Instructions/Directions

Unit-V

Speech: 1. You've Got to Find What You Love Steve Jobs

Skills: 2. Dietor

Centre for Distance and Omine Education (CDS:)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIROPER 5-69502.





Content A Course in Conversational Skiils

| | Unit-1 | |
|-----|--|----------------------------|
| 1.0 | Objectives | 2 |
| 1.1 | Introduction | 2 |
| 1.2 | Speech: Tryst with Destiny Jawaharlal Nehru | 2 |
| 1.3 | Vacabulary | 8 |
| | 1.3.1 In Depth Reading Comprehension | 25 |
| | 1.3.2 Topics for Speech | 25 |
| 1.4 | Greetings | 26 |
| 1.5 | Introduction | 31 |
| | 1.5.1 Introducing Oneself and Others | 32 |
| | 1.5.2 Examples | 33 |
| | 1.5.3 Practice Exercises | 36 |
| | 1.5.4 Asking Questions and Giving Reply | 38 |
| | 1.5.4.1 Practice Exercises | 40 |
| | Unit-2 | |
| 2.0 | Objectives | 44 |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 44 |
| 2.2 | Speech: Yes, we can Barack Obama | 45 |
| 2.3 | Vocabulary | 49 |
| 2.4 | A Leader should know how to Manage Failure | 49 |
| 2.5 | Requests once and o | 55 |
| 3.0 | Requests Unit-3 Unit-3 Unit-3 Unit-3 Unit-3 Unit-3 | REGIS 68.V. UNI TIRU |

| 3.2 | Nelson Mandela's Interview with Larry King | 65 |
|-----|--|--------------------------------------|
| 3.3 | Asking and Giving Information | 83 |
| | 3.2.1 Practice Exercises | 85 |
| 3.4 | Agreeing and Disagreeing | 87 |
| | Unit-4 | |
| 4.0 | Objectives | 96 |
| 4.1 | Introduction | 96 |
| 4.2 | JRD Tata's Interview with T.N.Ninan | 96 |
| 4.3 | Dialogue Building | 101 |
| | 4.3.1 Rules for Writing Dialogue | 103 |
| | 4.3.2 Activities | 103 |
| 4.4 | Giving Instructions/ Directions | 107 |
| | 4.4.1 Practice Exercises | 113 |
| | 4.4.2 Asking For and Giving Instructions | 114 |
| | 4.4.3 Practice Exercises | 116 |
| | Unit-5 | |
| 5.0 | Objectives | 118 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 118 |
| 5.2 | 'You've got to find what you Love,' | 118 |
| 5.3 | Debae | 124 |
| | 5.3.1 Necessity of Debate | 124 |
| | 5.3.2 The Basic Debating Skills | 124 |
| | 5.3.3 Essentials of a Good Debate 5.3.4 Structure for Debate DIRECTOR 5.2. University Tirupati | 125 MA |
| | 5.3.4 Structure for Debate | 127 REGIST |
| | 5 Section (CDC) Section (CDC) Section (CDC) | 1 8.V. U NIV TIR UP |
| | Online Education (CDC) Srl. Wenkateswara University 5.3 TRUPATY SECTIONS. | 129 |

 \mathbf{v}

| 5.4 | Descriptions | | 133 |
|-----|--------------|----------------------------------|-----|
| | 5.4.1 | Qualities of a Descriptive Essay | 134 |
| | 5.4.2 | Format | 134 |
| | 5.4.3 | Describing Places | 134 |
| | 5.4.4 | Describing People | 134 |
| | 5.4.5 | Describing Events | 135 |
| 5.5 | Role Plays | | 136 |
| | 5.5.1 | Examples | 140 |
| | 5.5.2 | Practice Exercises | 144 |







Life Skill Course Human Values and Professional Ethics

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors
Dr. M. Shanthi
Dr. B. Sudheeshna
Dept. of Management Studies
S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC®)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Human Values and Professional Ethics

Learning Outcome

On completion of this course, the UG students will be able to:

- Understand the significance of value inputs in a classroom and start applying them in their life and profession
- Distinguish between values and skills, happiness and accumulation of physical facilities, the Self and the Body, Intention and Competence of an individual, etc.
- Understand the value of harmonious relationship based on trust and respect in their life and profession
- Understand the role of a human being in ensuring harmony in society and nature.
- Distinguish between ethical and unethical practices, and start working out the strategy to actualize a harmonious environment wherever they work.

Unit-1: Introduction - Definition, Importance, Process & Classifications of Value Education

- Understanding the need, basic guidelines, content and process for Value Education
- Understanding the thought provoking issues; need for Values in our daily life
- Choices making Choosing, Cherishing & Acting
- Classification of Value Education: understanding Personal Values, Social Values, Moral Values & Spiritual Values.

Unit-2: Harmony in the Family - Understanding Values in Human Relationships

- Understanding harmony in the Family- the basic unit of human interaction
- Understanding the set of proposals to verify the Harmony in the Family;

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

- Trust (*Vishwas*) and Respect (*Samman*) as the foundational values of relationship
- Present Scenario: Differentiation (Disrespect) in relationships on the basis of body, physical facilities, or beliefs.
- Understanding the Problems faced due to differentiation in Relationships
- Understanding the harmony in the society (society being an extension of family): Samadhan, Samridhi, Abhay, Sah-astitva as comprehensive Human Goals
- Visualizing a universal harmonious order in society- Undivided Society (*Akhand Samaj*), Universal Order (*Sarvabhaum Vyawastha*)- from family to world family.

Unit-3: Professional Ethics in Education

- Understanding about Professional Integrity, Respect & Equality, Privacy, Building Trusting Relationships.
- Understanding the concepts; Positive cooperation, Respecting the competence of other professions.
- Understanding about Taking initiative and Promoting the culture of openness.
- Depicting Loyalty towards Goals and objectives.

iv

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Content Human Values and Professional Ethics

| | Unit-1: Introduction | | | |
|------|----------------------|---|----|--|
| 1.0 | Object | ives | 1 | |
| 1.1 | Introdu | uction | 1 | |
| 1.2 | Value | Education | 2 | |
| | 1.2.1 | Effective Management of Value Education | 4 | |
| | 1.2.2 | Objectives of Value-Education | 6 | |
| | 1.2.3 | Significance of Value Education | 7 | |
| | 1.2.4 | Guidelines for Value Education | 7 | |
| | 1.2.5 | Importance of Value Education | 8 | |
| 1.3 | Introd | uction to Values | 9 | |
| 1.4 | Defini | tion of Values | 10 | |
| 1.5 | Classi | fication of Value Education | 12 | |
| | 1.5.1 | Characteristics of Values | 14 | |
| | 1.5.2 | Types of Values | 15 | |
| 1.6 | Huma | n Values | 15 | |
| | 1.6.1 | Evolution of Human Values | 16 | |
| | 1.6.2 | Important Human Values | 17 | |
| | 1.6.3 | Types of Human Values | 17 | |
| | 1.6.4 | Universal Values | 18 | |
| | 1.6.5 | Cultural Values | 18 | |
| | 1.6.6 | Humanbeing in Bigger Order | 19 | |
| | 1.6.7 | Fundamental Values | 20 | |
| 1.7 | Conte | nt of Value Education | 20 | |
| 1.8 | Role o | f Value Education | 21 | |
| 1.9 | Need 1 | for Value Education | 22 | |
| | 1.9.1 | Basic Guidelines for Value Education | 25 | |
| 1.10 | Conte | nt and Process of Value Education | 26 | |
| | 1 10 1 | Preconditioning | 26 | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S. V. University

Tirupati

Tirupati

| | 1.10.2 | Ways to Apply our Personal Core values in Daily Li | fe 27 |
|------|---------|--|--------------|
| | 1.10.3 | Ways to Select Choice Making | 29 |
| 1.11 | Prospe | rity as parts of Value Education | 29 |
| | 1.11.1 | Physical Facilities for Animals and Humans | 32 |
| | 1.11.2 | Basic Human Aspirations | 35 |
| | 1.11.3 | Our State Today in Human Aspiration | 36 |
| | 1.11.4 | Need for Right Understanding | 37 |
| | 1.11.5 | Why is Happiness so Important to All of Us? | 38 |
| | 1.11.6 | Differences between Prosperity and Wealth | 38 |
| | 1.11.7 | SVDD, SSDD, SSSS | 40 |
| 1.12 | Outcor | mes | 42 |
| 1.13 | Reviev | v Questions | 42 |
| 1.14 | Multip | le Choice Questions | 43 |
| | | Unit-2: Harmony in the Family | |
| 2.0 | Object | ives | 45 |
| 2.1 | Introdu | action | 45 |
| 2.2 | Harmo | ny | 46 |
| | 2.2.1 | Harmony in Society | 47 |
| | 2.2.2 | Extended Relationship from Family to Society | 47 |
| | 2.2.3 | Harmony from Family to World Family | 48 |
| 2.3 | Harmo | ny in Nature | 48 |
| 2.4 | Harmo | ny in the family | 49 |
| | 2.4.1 | Family is Basic Unit of Human Interaction | 50 |
| | 2.4.2 | Family is a Natural Laboratory | 50 |
| 2.5 | Family | is Basic Unit of all Interaction | 50 |
| | 2.5.1 | Set of Proposals to Verify Harmony in Family | 51 |
| | 2.5.2 | Justice (Nyaya) | 51 |
| | 2.5.3 | Differentiation (Disrespect) in Relationships | 52 |
| | 2.5.4 | Problems Faced Due to Differentiation in | |
| | | Relationships | 54 |
| 2.6 | Values | in Relationships | 55 |
| | | | |

vi

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



| | 2.6.1 | Values in Human Relationships | 56 |
|------|---------|---|-----------|
| 2.7 | Basics | for respect and today's Crisis | 57 |
| | 2.7.1 | Trust (Vishwas) | 57 |
| | 2.7.2 | Respect (Samman) | 59 |
| | 2.7.3 | Affection | 60 |
| | 2.7.4 | Care | 61 |
| | 2.7.5 | Guidance | 61 |
| | 2.7.6 | Reverence | 62 |
| | 2.7.7 | Glory | 62 |
| | 2.7.8 | Gratitude | 62 |
| | 2.7.9 | Love | 63 |
| | 2.7.10 | Difference between Belief & Understanding | 64 |
| | | hensive Human Goal: The Five dimensions of | |
| | | Endeavour | 64 |
| | 2.8.1 | Comprehensive Human Goal | 67 |
| | 2.8.2 | Five Dimensions of Human Endeavour | 68 |
| | 2.8.3 | Prosperity in Families | 69 |
| | 2.8.4 | Recyclability and Self-regulation in Nature | 70 |
| 2.9 | Univer | rsal Human Order | 71 |
| | 2.9.1 | Right understanding in the Individuals is the basis | |
| | | for Harmony in the Family | 72 |
| 2.10 | Outco | mes | 72 |
| 2.11 | Review | v Questions | 73 |
| 2.12 | Multip | le Choice Questions | 74 |
| | | Unit-3: Professional Ethics in Education | |
| 3.0 | Object | ives | 77 |
| 3.1 | Introdu | action | 77 |
| 3.2 | Value 2 | Based Life and Profession | 78 |
| 3.3 | Profes | sional Integrity | 78 |
| | 3.3.1 | Professional Integrity in Business | 79 |
| | 3.3.2 | Equality and Respect | 80 |
| | 3.3.3 | Is Professional Integrity is Possible in | |
| | | Actual Working | 80 |

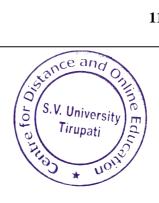
DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

| | 3.3.4 | Important of Professional Integrity in the Workpla | ce 8 0 |
|------|---------|---|---------------|
| | 3.3.5 | Tips for Maintaining Integrity | 81 |
| | 3.3.6 | Demonstrate of Integrity in the Workplace | 83 |
| | 3.3.7 | Examples of Integrity in the Workplace | 83 |
| 3.4 | Respec | ct and Equality | 84 |
| | 3.4.1 | Respect | 84 |
| | 3.4.2 | Equality | 85 |
| | 3.4.3 | Characteristic Features of Equality | 85 |
| | 3.4.4 | Kinds of Equality | 86 |
| 3.5 | Privac | y | 89 |
| | 3.5.1 | Multiple Dimensions or Types of Privacy | 89 |
| | 3.5.2 | Chief Contents or Ascepts of Privacy | 91 |
| 3.6 | Privac | y Law | 94 |
| | 3.6.1 | Classification of Privacy Law | 94 |
| 3.7 | Bulidir | ng Trusting Relationship | 95 |
| | 3.7.1 | How to Build Good Work Relationships | 96 |
| 3.8 | Positiv | e Cooperation | 98 |
| | 3.8.1 | Importance of Cooperation | 99 |
| | 3.8.2 | Advantages of Cooperation | 100 |
| 3.9 | Ethical | Competence | 101 |
| | 3.9.1 | Salient Features of Competence in Professional Ethics | 102 |
| | 3.9.2 | Respecting the competence of other professions | 103 |
| | 3.9.3 | Fundamental Principles in Competence in | |
| | | Professional Ethics | 103 |
| 3.10 | Openn | ess | 104 |
| | 3.10.1 | Drivers of Openness in an Organization | 105 |
| 3.11 | Loyalty | y | 108 |
| | 3.11.1 | Loyalty towards Goals and Objectives | 108 |
| | 3.11.2 | Differing Concepts of Loyalty | 108 |
| 3.12 | Outcor | mes | 110 |
| 3.13 | Review | v Questions | 110 |
| 3.14 | Multip | le Choice Questions | 111 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

viii





Life Skill Course Indian Culture & Science

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors
Dr. M. Shanthi
Dr. B. Sudheeshna
Dept. of Management Studies
S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP -517 502

S.V. University

Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC:)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Indian Culture & Science

Learning Outcomes

By successful completion of the course, students will be able to:

- 1. Understand the evolution of India's culture.
- 2. Analyze the process of modernization of Indian society and culture from past to future.
- 3. Comprehend objective education and evaluate scientific development of India in various spheres.
- 4. Inculcate nationalist and moral fervor and scientific temper.

Unit-I: Unity in Diversity in India

Coexistence of various religions since ancient times - Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism and Atheism, and later Sikhism, Islam and Christianity

The Bhakti (Vishnavite and Saivaite) and Sufi Movements

The concepts of seela, karuna, kshama, maitri, vinaya, santhi and ahimsa Achievements in Literature, Music, Dance, Sculpture and Painting - Craftsmanship in cloth, wood, clay, metal and ornaments

Cultural diversity, Monogamy, Family system, Important seasonal festivals

Unit-II: Social Reforms and Modern Society

Reforms by Basaveswara - Raja Rama Mohan Roy - Dayananda Saraswathi - Swamy Vivekananda - Mahatma Gandhi - B. R. Ambedkar - Reforms in Andhra by Vemana, Veerabrahmam, Gurajada, Veeresalingam and GurramJashua (only reforms in brief, biographies not needed)

Modern Society: Family unity, Community service, Social Harmony, Civic Sense, Gender Sensitivity, Equality, National Fervor

Unit-III: Science and Technology

Objectivity and Scientific Temper - Education on Scientific lines (Bloom's Taxonomy) - Online Education

Developments in Industry, Agriculture, Medicine, Space, Alternate Energy, Communications, Media through ages

Co-curricular Activities Suggested

- 1. Assignments, Group discussions, Quiz etc
- 2. Invited Lecture by a local expert
- 3. Visit to a scientific institutions, local heritage sites, museums, industries etc

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Content Indian Culture & Science

| | Unit-1: Indian Culture & Science | | | |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|----|--|
| 1.0 | Object | tives | 1 | |
| 1.1 | Introd | uction | 1 | |
| 1.2 | Indian | Culture | 2 | |
| 1.3 | Coexi | stence of Various Religions Since Ancient Times | 3 | |
| | 1.3.1 | Hinduism | 3 | |
| | 1.3.2 | Buddhism | 8 | |
| | 1.3.3 | Jainism | 14 | |
| | 1.3.4 | Atheism | 24 | |
| | 1.3.5 | Sikhism | 26 | |
| | | 1.3.5.1 History and Beliefs | 26 | |
| | | 1.3.5.2 The Sikh Identity | 26 | |
| | | 1.3.5.3 The Sikh Scripture | 27 | |
| | | 1.3.5.4 The Gurdwara | 27 | |
| | | 1.3.5.5 The Sikh Way of Life | 28 | |
| | | 1.3.5.6 Women | 28 | |
| | | 1.3.5.7 Dietary Restrictions | 29 | |
| | | 1.3.5.8 Other Religions | 29 | |
| | 1.3.6 | Islam | 29 | |
| | 1.3.7 | Christianity | 39 | |
| 1.4 | The B | hakti | 44 | |
| | 1.4.1 | Types of Bhakti Cultures | 47 | |
| | 1.4.2 | Bhakti Saints | 49 | |
| | 1.4.3 | Impact of Bhakti Movement on Indian Society | 50 | |
| 1.5 | Sufi M | Iovements | 51 | |
| | 1.5.1 | Roots of Sufism | 51 | |
| | 1.5.2 | Origin of Sufism | 52 | |
| | 1.5.3 | Development of Sufism | 52 | |
| | 1.5.4 | Sufism in India | 53 | |
| | 1.5.5 | Orders of Sufism | 54 | |

iv

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

University
Tirupati

| | 1.5.6 | Interaction between Hindu and Muslim Saints | 58 |
|------|---------|---|----|
| | 1.5.7 | Differences between Bhakti and Sufi Movements | 58 |
| 1.6 | The co | oncepts | 59 |
| 1.7 | Achiev | vements in Literature | 62 |
| 1.8 | Music | | 64 |
| | 1.8.1 | Treatises | 65 |
| 1.9 | Dance | | 65 |
| | 1.9.1 | Early Texts on Classical Dance | 66 |
| | 1.9.2 | Basic Techniques in Classical Dance | 68 |
| 1.10 | Sculptu | ure | 70 |
| 1.11 | Paintin | g | 76 |
| 1.12 | Crafts' | Traditions | 77 |
| 1.13 | Cultura | al Diversity | 79 |
| 1.14 | Monog | gamy | 81 |
| 1.15 | Family | | 81 |
| | 1.15.1 | Advantages of Joint Family | 82 |
| | 1.15.2 | Imbibing Values | 83 |
| 1.16 | Season | al Festivals in India | 83 |
| 1.17 | Outcor | mes | 86 |
| 1.18 | Reviev | v Questions | 86 |
| 1.19 | Multip | le Choice Questions | 86 |
| | | (Unit-2: Social Reforms and Modern Society) | |
| 2.0 | Object | ives | 89 |
| 2.1 | Introdu | action | 89 |
| 2.2 | Reform | ns by Basaveswara | 90 |
| 2.3 | Raja R | ammohan Roy | 94 |
| | 2.3.1 | Contributions | 95 |
| | 2.3.2 | Economic and Political Reforms | 96 |
| | 2.3.3 | Religious Reforms | 97 |
| | 2.3.4 | Brahmo Samaj | 97 |
| | 2.3.5 | Synthetic Approach | 97 |
| | 2.3.6 | Regeneration of Women | 98 |
| 2.4 | Dayana | anda Saraswathi | 98 |
| | 2.4.1 | Religious Reforms | 98 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

| | 2.4.2 | Opposition to Caste System and Untouchability | 99 |
|------|---------|---|-----|
| | 2.4.3 | Sudhi Movement | 99 |
| | 2.4.4 | Status of Women | 99 |
| | 2.4.5 | Educational Reforms | 100 |
| | 2.4.6 | Dayanand and Nationalism | 100 |
| | 2.4.7 | Believer of Democracy | 100 |
| | 2.4.8 | Importance of Village Administration | 101 |
| | 2.4.9 | Nation Building Through Language | 101 |
| | 2.4.10 | Dayanand Saraswati & Arya Samaj | 101 |
| 2.5 | Swami | Vivekananda | 102 |
| | 2.5.1 R | Reforms | 103 |
| 2.6 | Mahati | ma Gandhi | 106 |
| | 2.6.1 | Unconventional Techinques | 107 |
| | 2.6.2 | Daridranarayan | 107 |
| | 2.6.3 | Strain-free Nationalism | 108 |
| | 2.6.4 | Abolition of Untouchability | 108 |
| | 2.6.5 | Accepting Varnas and Denouncing Caste System | 109 |
| | 2.6.6 | Reservation | 109 |
| | 2.6.7 | Participation of Women | 110 |
| 2.7 | B. R. A | Ambedkar | 110 |
| | 2.7.1 | Main Architect of Indian Constitution | 110 |
| | 2.7.2 | Constitutional Morality | 111 |
| | 2.7.3 | Democracy | 111 |
| | 2.7.4 | Social Reforms | 111 |
| | 2.7.5 | Factsheet | 112 |
| | 2.7.6 | Methods Adopted to Remove Untouchability | 113 |
| | 2.7.7 | Relevance of Ambedkar in Present Times | 113 |
| 2.8 | Reform | ns in Andhra by Vemana | 114 |
| 2.9 | Veerab | orahmam | 115 |
| 2.10 | Guraja | da Appa Rao | 115 |
| 2.11 | Kandu | kuri Veeresalingam | 116 |
| 2.12 | Gurran | n Jashuva | 117 |
| 2.13 | Moder | n Society | 118 |
| | 2.13.1 | Characteristics of Modern Society | 118 |
| | | ce and | |

vi

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

| 2.14 | Family Unity | 119 | |
|------|---|-----|--|
| | 2.14.1 The Right to Family Unity | 119 | |
| | 2.14.2 Different Kinds of Families and the Right to Unity | 120 | |
| 2.15 | Community Service | 121 | |
| | 2.15.1 Community Service Has a Number of Important Benefits | 122 | |
| 2.16 | Social Harmony | 122 | |
| | 2.16.1 Elements of Social Harmony | 123 | |
| | 2.16.2 Importance of Social Harmony | 124 | |
| 2.17 | Civic Sense | 124 | |
| | 2.17.1 Importance of Civic Sense | 125 | |
| | 2.17.2 Teaching about Civic Sense | 126 | |
| 2.18 | Gender Sensitivity | 126 | |
| | 2.18.1 Gender Stereotypes | 127 | |
| | 2.18.2 Gender Roles | 127 | |
| | 2.18.3 Gender Equality | 127 | |
| | 2.18.4 Equal Treatment | 127 | |
| | 2.18.5 Gender Mainstreaming | 128 | |
| 2.19 | Equality | 128 | |
| | 2.19.1 Features | 129 | |
| | 2.19.2 Types of Equality | 129 | |
| 2.20 | National Fervor | 130 | |
| 2.21 | Outcomes | 130 | |
| 2.22 | Review Questions | 131 | |
| 2.23 | Multiple Choice Questions | 131 | |
| | (Unit-3: Science and Technology) | | |
| 3.0 | Objectives | 135 | |
| 3.1 | Introduction | 135 | |
| 3.2 | Scientific Objectivity | | |
| | 3.2.1 Objectivity as Faithfulness to Facts | 137 | |
| | 3.2.2 The View from Nowhere | 137 | |
| 3.3 | Scientific Temper | 138 | |
| 3.4 | Education on Scientific Lines (Bloom's Taxonomy) | | |
| | 3.4.1 Online Learning | 141 | |
| 3.5 | Developments of Technology | 144 | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

| | 3.5.1 | Scientific and Technological Developments in Ancient India | 145 |
|------|-----------------------------|--|-----|
| | 3.5.2 | Scientific and Technological Developments in Medieval India | 146 |
| | 3.5.3 | Advancement of Science and Technology is Observed in following | |
| | | Areas in Modern Time | 147 |
| 3.6 | Industr | у | 148 |
| | 3.6.1 | Benefits of Increased R&D Spending | 148 |
| | 3.6.2 | New Trends in Manufacturing | 149 |
| 3.7 | Agriculture | | |
| | 3.7.1 | Objectives | 153 |
| | 3.7.2 | Challenges faced by Technology in Modern Era | 154 |
| | 3.7.3 | Impact of Science and Technology in Agricultural Sector | 154 |
| | 3.7.4 | The Recent Innovations and Technologies in Agriculture | 155 |
| | 3.7.5 | A new Era of Scientific Farming | 157 |
| | 3.7.6 | G-tech to Propel Economy's Growth Trajectory | 157 |
| 3.8 | Medicine 1 | | |
| | 3.8.1 | New Advancements in Medical Research in India | 160 |
| | 3.8.2 | Greatest Medical Achievements in India | 161 |
| 3.9 | Space | | 163 |
| | 3.9.1 | X-ray Astronomy | 164 |
| 3.10 | Alterna | ate Energy | 165 |
| | 3.10.1 | Current Scenario of Renewable Energy in India | 166 |
| 3.11 | Comm | unication | 167 |
| 3.12 | Media through ages | | |
| | 3.12.1 | The Rise of the Social Network | 170 |
| | 3.12.2 | Social Media in Indian Politics | 171 |
| | 3.12.3 | Social Media and Business | 171 |
| | 3.12.4 | Social Media and Recruitment in India | 172 |
| | 3.12.5 | Social Media and IPL | 172 |
| | 3.12.6 | Limitations of Social Media in India | 172 |
| | Outcor | | 173 |
| 3.14 | Review Questions | | |
| 3.15 | Multiple Choice Questions 1 | | |

viii

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Life Skill Course

Environmental Education

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors

Dr. M. Shanthi Dr. B. Sudheeshna

Dept. of Management Studies S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP -517 502

ance and

S.V. University

Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC:)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Environmental Education

Learning outcomes

On completion of this course the students will be able to

- 1. Understand the nature, components of an ecosystem and that humans are an integral part of nature.
- 2. Realize the importance of environment, the goods and services of a healthy biodiversity, dependence of humans on environment.
- 3. Evaluate the ways and ill effects of destruction of environment, population explosion on ecosystems and global problems consequent to anthropogenic activities.
- 4. Discuss the laws/ acts made by government to prevent pollution, to protect biodiversity and environment as a whole.
- 5. Acquaint with international agreements and national movements, and realize citizen's role in protecting environment and nature.

Unit-1: Environment and Natural Resources

- 1. Multidisciplinary nature of environmental education; scope and importance.
- 2. Man as an integral product and part of the Nature.
- 3. A brief account of land, forest and water resources in India and their importance.
- 4. Biodiversity: Definition; importance of Biodiversity ecological, consumptive, productive, social, ethical and moral, aesthetic, and option value.
- 5. Levels of Biodiversity: Genetic, species and ecosystem diversity.

Unit-2: Environmental Degradation and Impacts

- 1. Human population growth and its impacts on environment; land use change, land degradation, soil erosion and desertification.
- 2. Use and over-exploitation of surface and ground water, construction of dams, floods, conflicts over water (within India).
- 3. **Deforestation:** Causes and effects due to expansion of agriculture, firewood, mining, forest fires and building of new habitats.
- 4. Non-renewable energy resources, their utilization and influences.
- 5. A brief account of air, water, soil and noise pollutions; Biological, industrial and solid wastes in urban areas. Human health and economic risks.
- 6. Green house effect global warming; ocean acidification, ozone layer depletion, acid rains and impacts on human communities and agriculture.

nce and

S.V. University

Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

7. Threats to biodiversity: Natural calamities, habitat destruction and fragmentation, over exploitation, hunting and poaching, introduction of exotic species, pollution, predator and pest control.

Unit-3: Conservation of Environment

- 1. Concept of sustainability and sustainable development with judicious use of land, water and forest resources; afforestation.
- 2. Control measures for various types of pollution; use of renewable and alternate sources of energy.
- 3. Solid waste management: Control measures of urban and industrial waste.
- **4. Conservation of biodiversity:** In-situ and ex-situ conservation of biodiversity.
- **5. Environment Laws:** Environment Protection Act; Act; Wildlife Protection Act; Forest Conservation Act.
- **6. International agreements:** Montreal and Kyoto protocols; Environmental movements: Bishnois of Rajasthan, Chipko, Silent valley.

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University

Tirupati

Content Environmental Education

| | | (Unit-1: Environment and Natural Resources) | |
|-----|----------------------------|--|----|
| 1.0 | Object | tives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Introd | uction | 1 |
| 1.2 | Definitions of Environment | | 2 |
| | 1.2.1 | Classification of Environment | 3 |
| | 1.2.2 | Components of Environment | 3 |
| | 1.2.3 | Environmental Studies | 5 |
| | 1.2.4 | Objectives of Environmental Education | 6 |
| | 1.2.5 | Importance of the Environmental Studies | 7 |
| | 1.2.6 | Scope of Environmental Education | 8 |
| | 1.2.7 | Multidisciplinary Nature | 9 |
| | 1.2.8 | Need for Public Awareness | 11 |
| 1.3 | Man a | s an Integral Product and Part of Nature | 12 |
| 1.4 | Land Resources | | 13 |
| | 1.4.1 | Land as a Resource | 14 |
| | 1.4.2 | Land Degradation | 14 |
| | 1.4.3 | Physical Properties of Soil | 15 |
| | 1.4.4. | Landslides | 16 |
| | 1.4.5 | Soil Erosion | 17 |
| | 1.4.6 | Desertification | 18 |
| | 1.4.7 | Environmental Impacts of Overgrazing | 19 |
| 1.5 | Forest Resources | | |
| | 1.5.1 | Use of Forests | 20 |
| | 1.5.2 | Importance of Forests | 21 |
| | 1.5.3 | Over-exploitation of Forests | 22 |
| | 1.5.4 | Forest Areas in India | 22 |
| | 1.5.5 | Deforestation | 24 |
| | 1.5.6 | Major Causes of Deforestation | 24 |
| | 1.5.7 | Effects of Deforestation Environment and Tribal People | 25 |
| | 1.5.8 | Afforestation Programmes | 26 |
| | 1.5.9 | Timber Extraction | 26 |





| | 1.5.10 | Effects of Mining Operations on a Forest and Tribal People | 27 |
|------|----------------------------|--|----|
| 1.6 | Water | Resources | 29 |
| | 1.6.1 | Uses of Water | 30 |
| | 1.6.2 | Effects of Over-utilisation of Surface & Ground Water | 30 |
| | 1.6.3 | Effects of Overutilisation of Ground Water | 31 |
| | 1.6.4 | Conflicts Over Water | 31 |
| 1.7 | Biodiv | versity | 32 |
| | 1.7.1 | Definitions | 33 |
| | 1.7.2 | Types of Biodiversity | 33 |
| | 1.7.3 | Importance of Biodiversity | 35 |
| | 1.7.4 | Uses of Biodiversity | 40 |
| | 1.7.5 | Values of Biodiversity | 42 |
| 1.8 | Levels | s of Biodiversity | 43 |
| 1.9 | Outco | mes | 46 |
| 1.10 | Revie | w Questions | 46 |
| 1.11 | Multip | ole Choice Questions | 47 |
| | | Unit-2: Environmental Degradation and Impacts | |
| 2.0 | Object | tives | 49 |
| 2.1 | Introd | uction | 49 |
| 2.2 | Popula | ation Growth | 50 |
| | 2.2.1 Population Explosion | | 50 |
| | 2.2.2 1 | Impact on Environment | 52 |
| 2.3 | Land | use Change | 53 |
| | 2.3.1 | Direct Land use Change | 54 |
| | 2.3.2 | Indirect Land use Change | 55 |
| | 2.3.3 | Limitations of the Indirect Land use Change Concept | 55 |
| 2.4 | Land 1 | Degradation | 56 |
| | 2.4.1 | Causes of Land Degradation | 56 |
| | 2.4.2 | Prevention and Control Measures for Land Degradation | 57 |
| | 2.4.3 | Soil Erosion | 57 |
| | 2.4.4 | Desertification | 59 |
| 2.5 | Water | Resources | 59 |
| | 2.5.1 | Uses of Water | 60 |
| | 2.5.2 | Effects of Over-utilisation of Surface & Ground Water | 61 |
| | 2.5.3 | Construction of Dams | 62 |
| | | ance and o | MA |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University Tirupati

8.V. UNIVERSITY
TIRUPATL

| | 2.5.4 | Floods | 65 |
|------|---|--|-----|
| | 2.5.5 | Drought | 66 |
| | 2.5.6 | Conflicts Over Water | 67 |
| 2.6 | Defore | estation | 70 |
| | 2.6.1 | Major Causes of Deforestation | 71 |
| | 2.6.2 | Effects of Deforestation Environment and Tribal People | 72 |
| | 2.6.3 | Causes | 73 |
| | 2.6.4 | Effects | 74 |
| 2.7 | Resour | rces | 74 |
| | 2.7.1 Differences between Renewable and Non-renewable Resources | | 75 |
| | 2.7.2 N | Non-Renewable Energy Resources | 76 |
| 2.8 | Pollutio | on | 78 |
| | 2.8.1 | Air Pollution | 79 |
| | 2.8.2 | Water Pollution | 85 |
| | 2.8.3 | Soil Pollution | 89 |
| | 2.8.4 | Noise Pollution | 91 |
| | 2.8.5 | Solid Waste | 95 |
| | 2.8.6 | Human health and Economic Risks | 97 |
| 2.9 | Green House effect | | |
| | 2.9.1 | Global Warming and Green House Effects | 98 |
| | 2.9.3 | Ocean Acidification | 101 |
| | 2.9.4 | Ozone Layer Depletion | 102 |
| | 2.9.5 | Acid Rain (Acid Precipitation) | 106 |
| 2.10 | Threat | s to Biodiversity | 109 |
| 2.11 | Outcomes | | |
| 2.12 | Review Questions | | |
| 2.13 | Multip | le Choice Questions | 112 |
| | | Unit-3: Conservation of Environment | |
| 3.0 | Object | ives | 117 |
| 3.1 | Introdu | action | 117 |
| 3.2 | Sustain | ability | 118 |
| | 3.2.1 | Issues of Environmental Sustainability | 118 |
| 3.3 | Sustainable development | | |
| | 3.3.1 | Goals of Sustainable Development | 122 |
| | 3.3.2 | Threats to Sustainability | 122 |
| | | | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

| | 3.3.3 | Sustainable Development with Judicious use of Land | 125 |
|------|--|---|-----|
| | 3.3.4 Sustainable Development with Judicious use of Water | | |
| | 3.3.5 Sustainable Development with Judicious use of Forest Resources | | |
| | 3.3.6 Aforestration | | 126 |
| 3.4 | Control Measures for Various Types of Pollution | | |
| | 3.4.1 | Control of Air Pollution | 128 |
| | 3.4.2 | Control of Automobile Pollution | 128 |
| | 3.4.3 | Control of Water Pollution | 129 |
| | 3.4.4 | Control of Soil Pollution | 129 |
| | 3.4.5 | Control of Noise Pollution | 130 |
| | 3.4.6 | Control of Thermal Pollution | 130 |
| 3.5 | Energy | Resources | 131 |
| | 3.5.1 | Growing Energy Needs | 131 |
| | 3.5.2 | Types of Natural Resources | 132 |
| | 3.5.3 | Use of Alternate Energy Sources | 134 |
| 3.6 | Solid Waste management | | |
| | 3.6.1 | Increasing Industrialization and Rapid Urbanisation | 136 |
| | 3.6.2 | Effects of Solid Waste Pollution | 138 |
| | 3.6.3 | Measures for Safe Urban and Industrial Waste Disposal | 138 |
| 3.7 | Conser | vation of Biodiversity | 140 |
| 3.8 | Environment Laws | | |
| | 3.8.1 | The Environment (Protection) Act, 1986 | 145 |
| | 3.8.2 | Wildlife Protection Act | 146 |
| | 3.8.3 | Forest Conservation Act, 1980 | 148 |
| 3.9 | International Agreements | | |
| | 3.9.1 | Kyoto Protocol | 150 |
| | 3.9.2 | Motreal Protocol | 151 |
| 3.10 | Environmental Movement | | |
| | 3.10.1 | Bishnois of Rajasthan | 152 |
| | 3.10.2 | Chipko Movement | 153 |
| | 3.10.3 | Silent Valley | 154 |
| 3.11 | Outcor | mes | 155 |
| 3.12 | Reviev | v Questions | 155 |
| 3.13 | Multiple Choice Questions | | |
| | | | |

viii

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

Life Skill Course

Personality Enhancement & Leadership

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors
Dr. M. Shanthi
Dr. B. Sudheeshna
Dept. of Management Studies

S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP -517 502

ance and

S.V. University

Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Personality Enhancement & Leadership

Learning Outcomes

By successful completion of the course, students will be able to:

- Develop comprehensive understanding of personality
- Know how to assess and enhance one's own personality
- Comprehend leadership qualities and their importance
- Understand how to develop leadership qualities

Unit-I

Meaning of Personality – Explanations of Human Personality – Psychodynamic Explanations – Social Cognitive Explanation – Big Five traits of Personality

Unit-II

Assessment of Personality - Projective & Self Report Techniques - Building Self-Confidence – Enhancing Personality Skills

Unit-III

Leadership Characteristics – Types of Leaders – Importance of Leadership – Leadership Skills – Building and Leading Efficient Teams – Leadership Qualities of Abraham Lincoln, mahatma Gandhi, Prakasam Pantulu, Dr. B. R. Ambedkar & J.R.D.Tata

DIRECTOR

Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Content Personality Enhancement & Leadership

| | Unit-1 | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--|----|--|
| 1.0 | Object | tives | 1 | |
| 1.1 | Introdu | uction | 1 | |
| 1.2 | Personality | | 2 | |
| | 1.2.1 | Nature of Personality | 3 | |
| | 1.2.2 | Characteristics of Personality | 4 | |
| | 1.2.3 | Foundations of Personality | 4 | |
| | 1.2.4 | Stages of Personality | 5 | |
| | 1.2.5 | Determinants of Personality | 6 | |
| 1.3 | Person | nality Structure | 8 | |
| 1.4 | Theor | ies of Personality | 9 | |
| 1.5 | Psycho | odynamics | 13 | |
| | 1.5.1 | Psychosexual Stages of Development | 16 | |
| | 1.5.2 | Freudian Psychodynamics | 17 | |
| | 1.5.3 | Jungian Psychodynamics | 17 | |
| | 1.5.4 | Positive Psychology | 18 | |
| | 1.5.5 | Psychoanalysis | 19 | |
| | | 1.5.5.1 Key Terms of Psychoanalytical Theory | 19 | |
| | | 1.5.5.2 Strengths of Psychoanalysis | 20 | |
| | | 1.5.5.3 Criticisms of Psychoanalysis | 20 | |
| 1.6 | Psychodynamic Theory of Personality | | 20 | |
| | 1.6.1 | Psychodynamic Treatment | 22 | |
| | 1.6.2 | Other Psychodynamic Theorists | 22 | |
| | 1.6.3 | Erickson Psychodynamic Theory of Personality | 23 | |
| | | 1.6.3.1 The Ego Psychology | 23 | |
| | | 1.6.3.2 The Epigenetic Principle | 23 | |
| 1.7 | Social Cognitive Explanation | | 26 | |
| | 1.7.1 | Main Tenets of Social Cognitive Theory | 26 | |
| | 1.7.2 | Albert Bandura's Social Learning Theory | 26 | |
| | 1.7.3 | Evaluation of Bandura's Theory | 32 | |

iv

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

| 1.8 | Defini | tion of the Big Five Factors | 32 |
|------|---------------------------|---|----|
| | 1.8.1 | Discovery of the Big Five in Cattell's Variable List | 33 |
| | 1.8.2 | The Big Five Theory | 34 |
| | 1.8.3 | Measurement of the Big Five Inventory (BFI) | 36 |
| 1.9 | Outco | mes | 39 |
| 1.10 | Review | w Questions | 40 |
| | | Unit-2 | |
| 2.0 | Object | ives | 41 |
| 2.1 | Introdu | action | 41 |
| 2.2 | Assessment of Personality | | 41 |
| | 2.2.1 | Need of Assessment | 42 |
| | 2.2.2 | Purpose of Personality Assessment | 43 |
| 2.3 | Metho | ds of Personality Assessment | 43 |
| | 2.3.1. | Personality Inventories | 44 |
| | | 2.3.1.1 History of Personality Assessment | 45 |
| | 2.3.2 | Projective Methods | 48 |
| | | 2.3.2.1 History of Projective Methods | 48 |
| | | 2.3.2.2 Types of Projective Tests | 49 |
| | | 2.3.2.3 Evaluation of Projective Tests | 51 |
| | 2.3.3 | Observational Methods | 52 |
| | 2.3.4 | Self-Report Tests | 52 |
| | 2.3.5 | Self Report Personality Test (Inventory) | 55 |
| | | 2.3.5.1 Single-Traits Tests | 57 |
| | | 2.3.5.2 Multidimensional Tests | 57 |
| | | 2.3.5.3 Strength and Weakness of Self-Report Tests | 57 |
| | | 2.3.5.4 Faking in Personality Inventories | 58 |
| | | 2.3.5.5 Measures to Avoid Faking | 58 |
| | | 2.3.5.6 Methods to Overcome Weaknesses in Self-Report Tests | 59 |
| 2.4 | Buildi | ng Self confidence | 60 |
| | 2.4.1 | Techniques of Self Confidence | 61 |
| 2.5 | Enhan | cing Personality skills | 63 |
| | 2.5.1 | Importance of Personality Skills | 64 |
| | 2.5.2 | Enhancing Personality Skills | 64 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

| | 2.5.3 | Steps to Improve Personal Development Skills | 65 |
|------|---------|--|-----------|
| | 2.5.4 | Personal Development Skills in the Workplace | 66 |
| 2.6 | Outco | mes | 67 |
| 2.7 | Reviev | v Questions | 67 |
| | | (Unit-3) | |
| 3.2 | Definit | ion | 70 |
| | 3.2.1 | Characteristics of Leadership | 70 |
| | 3.2.2 | Nature of Leadership | 71 |
| | 3.2.3 | Importance of Leadership | 72 |
| | 3.2.4 | Need of Leadership | 73 |
| 3.3 | Leader | rship Types | 73 |
| 3.4 | Styles | of Leadership | 75 |
| 3.5 | Leader | rship skills | 79 |
| | 3.5.1 | Functions of Leader | 80 |
| | 3.5.2 | Qualities of an Effective Leader | 81 |
| | 3.5.3 | Leadership Skills | 82 |
| | 3.5.4 | Qualities of Leadership | 83 |
| 3.6 | Buildi | ng and Leading Efficient Teams | 83 |
| | 3.6.1 | Team Development Stages | 84 |
| | 3.6.2 | Different Types of Teams | 84 |
| | 3.6.3 | Team Building | 85 |
| | 3.6.4 | Importance of Building Strong Teams | 86 |
| | 3.6.5 | Steps in Building Strong Teams | 87 |
| | 3.6.6 | Team Activities | 89 |
| 3.7 | Leader | rship Qualities of Abraham Lincoln | 90 |
| 3.8 | Leader | rship Qualities of Mahatma Gandhi | 91 |
| 3.9 | Leader | rship Qualities of Prakasham Pantulu | 92 |
| 3.10 | Leader | rship Qualities of B.R. Ambdkar | 93 |
| 3.11 | Leader | rship Qualities of J.R.D. Tata | 93 |
| | 3.11.1 | Leadership Skills | 95 |
| 3.12 | Outco | mes | 95 |
| 3.13 | Reviev | v Questions | 96 |

vi

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Skill Development Course

Office Secretaryship

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors Dr. M. Shanthi Dr. B. Sudheeshna Dept. of Management Studies

S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC®)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Office Secretaryship

Learning Outcomes

By the successful completion of course, the student will be able to;

- Understand the organizational hierarchy and outlines of functioning.
- 2. Comprehend the role of office secretaryship in a small and medium organization.
- 3. Acquire knowledge on office procedures and interpersonal skills.
- 4. Apply the skills in preparing and presenting notes, letters, statements, reports in different situations.

Unit-I: Introduction

Introduction - Organisational structure of a small and medium organization - Types of offices - Kinds of secretaries - The scope of office secretaryship.

Unit-II: Office Secretary

The role of an office secretary - Duties and responsibilities - Usage of different devices - Flowchart and office manuals - Coordinating different wings of an office/organisaton - Arranging common meetings - Operations of banking and financial services - travel and hospitality management services.

Unit-III: Office Procedures

Office procedures - Filing - Circulating files - Preparation of notes, circulars, agenda and minutes of meetings - Issue of press notes - Maintenance of files and records - Inventory, office, human resources, financial and confidential - maintaining public relations.

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

Content Office Secretaryship

| Unit-1: Introduction | | | |
|----------------------|---------|--|----|
| 1.0 | Object | tives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Introdu | uction | 1 |
| 1.2 | Organ | isation | 2 |
| | 1.2.1 | Definitions of Organization and Organizing | 2 |
| | 1.2.2 | Elements of Organization | 3 |
| | 1.2.3 | Nature of Organization | 6 |
| | 1.2.4 | Importance of Organization | 7 |
| | 1.2.5 | Advantages of Organzing | 7 |
| | 1.2.6 | Principles of Organization | 9 |
| | 1.2.7 | Steps in the Process of Organisation | 11 |
| 1.3 | Organ | izations Structure | 12 |
| | 1.3.1 | Significance of Organization Structure | 13 |
| | 1.3.2 | Principles of Organzation Structure | 14 |
| 1.4 | Types | of Organizations | 14 |
| | 1.4.1 | Based on Organization Structure | 14 |
| | 1.4.2 | Based on Authority | 19 |
| 1.5 | Meani | ng and Definition of Office | 22 |
| | 1.5.1 | Office Work | 24 |
| | 1.5.2 | Office Activities | 25 |
| | 1.5.3 | Factors Contributing to the Growth of Office | |
| | | Work | 26 |
| | 1.5.4 | Types of Office | 27 |
| 1.6 | Secret | ary | 28 |
| | 1.6.1 | Appointment of a Secretary | 30 |

iv

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



| | 1.6.2 | Qualifications and Personal Qualities of | |
|------|---------|--|----|
| | | a Secretary | 31 |
| | 1.6.3 | Remuneration of a Secretary | 35 |
| | 1.6.4 | Functions or Duties of a Secretary | 35 |
| | 1.6.5 | Rights of a Secretary | 36 |
| | 1.6.6 | Powers of a Secretary | 36 |
| | 1.6.7 | Liabilities of a Secretary | 37 |
| | 1.6.8 | Importance of Secretary | 37 |
| 1.7 | Types | of Secretary | 38 |
| 1.8 | Scope | of Secretary | 40 |
| 1.9 | Outcor | mes | 43 |
| 1.10 | Review | v Questions | 43 |
| | | Unit-2: Office Secretary | |
| 2.0 | Object | ives | 45 |
| 2.1 | Introdu | action | 45 |
| 2.2 | Role o | f an Office Secretary | 46 |
| 2.3 | Duties | of Office Secretary | 48 |
| 2.4 | Respon | nsibilites of Secretary | 51 |
| 2.5 | Usage | of Different Devices | 53 |
| | 2.5.1 | Brief Overview of Office Equipments | 54 |
| | 2.5.2 | Brief List of Modern Office Technologies | 55 |
| | 2.5.3 | Summary of the Advantages of Office | |
| | | Equipments | 56 |
| | 2.5.4 | Meaning and Types of Mail | 56 |
| | | 2.5.4.1 Handling of Incoming Mail | 57 |
| | | 2.5.4.2 Handling of Outgoing Mail | 59 |
| | | 2.5.4.3 Handling of Electronic Mail | 62 |
| | | 2.5.4.4 Mail Room Equipment | 63 |

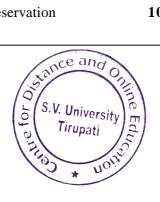
DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

| 2.6 | Flow C | Chart | 65 |
|------|---------|---|-----------|
| | 2.6.1 | Straight-Line Flow of Work | 66 |
| | 2.6.2 | Problems in Smooth Flow of Work | 67 |
| 2.7 | Office | Manuals | 68 |
| | 2.7.1 | Definition of Office Manual | 68 |
| | 2.7.2 | Need for Office Manuals | 69 |
| | 2.7.3 | Types of Office Manuals | 69 |
| | 2.7.4 | Principles of Office Manuals | 71 |
| | 2.7.5 | Steps in Preparation and Writing of Office | |
| | | Manuals | 71 |
| | 2.7.6 | Advantages of Office Manuals | 73 |
| | 2.7.7 | Disadvantages of Office Manuals | 73 |
| | 2.7.8 | Revision and Distribution of Office Manuals | 74 |
| | 2.7.9 | Distribution of Office Manuals | 74 |
| 2.8 | Coordi | nating Different Wings of an Office/Organisaton | 74 |
| 2.9 | Meetin | g - Meaning, Importance and Types of Meetings | 77 |
| | 2.9.1 | Types of Meetings | 77 |
| | 2.9.2 | Requisites of a Valid Meeting | 79 |
| | 2.9.3 | Secretarial Duties Relating to Meetings | 84 |
| | 2.9.4 | Terms Relating to Meeting | 85 |
| 2.10 | Service | es Provided by Banks | 87 |
| | 2.10.1 | Other Common Facilities Provided by Banks | 91 |
| | 2.10.2 | General Utility Services Provided by Banks | 92 |
| | 2.10.3 | Terms Used in Banking Transactions | 94 |
| 2.11 | Modes | of Travel | 99 |
| | 2.11.1 | How to Make Railway Reservation | 100 |

vi

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



| | 2.11.2 | Air Travel | 101 |
|------|---------|---|-----|
| | 2.11.3 | E-Ticket and Paper Ticket | 103 |
| | 2.11.4 | Travel Agencies | 103 |
| | 2.11.5 | Hotel Reservation | 104 |
| | 2.11.6 | Itinerary | 105 |
| | 2.11.7 | Organizing Travel | 105 |
| | 2.11.8 | Tour Advance and Tour Claim | 106 |
| | 2.11.9 | Overse as Travel Appangement | 106 |
| 2.12 | Outcor | mes | 108 |
| 2.13 | Review | v Questions | 109 |
| | | Unit-3: Office Procedures | |
| 3.0 | Object | ives | 111 |
| 3.1 | Introdu | action | 111 |
| 3.2 | Meani | ng of Procedure | 113 |
| | 3.2.1 | Definition | 113 |
| | 3.2.2 | Importance of Systems and Procedures | 114 |
| | 3.2.3 | Benefits and Limitations of Systems and | |
| | | Procedures | 114 |
| 3.3 | Filing | - Meaning, Importance and Essentials | 115 |
| | 3.3.1 | Essentials of a Good Filing System | 117 |
| | 3.3.2 | Classification of Filing - Alphabetical, Numerical, | |
| | | Geogr-Aphical, Subject, Chronological | 117 |
| | 3.3.3 | Methods of filing-Horizontal and Vertical | 122 |
| | 3.3.4 | E-Filing | 124 |
| | 3.3.5 | Weeding out or Destruction of Old Records | 128 |
| | 3.3.6 | Indexing | 128 |
| | 3.3.7 | Filing Procedure | 132 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

vii

S.V. University

Tirupati

| 3.4 | Notice | | 134 |
|------|---------|--|-----|
| 3.5 | Circula | ur | 137 |
| 3.6 | Prepara | ation of Notice, Agenda and Minutes of Meeting | 139 |
| 3.7 | Press 1 | Note | 147 |
| | 3.7.1 | Press Notes have the Force of Law | 147 |
| | 3.7.2 | Press Notes are Subject to Judicial Review | 149 |
| 3.8 | Mainte | enance of Files and Records | 149 |
| | 3.8.1 | Improve Records Management in Any Office | 153 |
| 3.9 | Mainte | enance of Inventory Records | 154 |
| | 3.9.1 | Maintaining Inventory Records | 157 |
| 3.10 | Mainte | enace of Human Resource | 163 |
| | 3.10.1 | Benefits of Cloud- Based Document Storage | 165 |
| | 3.10.2 | Important Practices for Personnel Files | 165 |
| 3.11 | Mainte | enance of Financial Record | 166 |
| 3.12 | Confid | ential Files | 169 |
| 3.13 | Public | Relations | 170 |
| | 3.13.1 | Functions of Public Relations Department | |
| | | (Promotion Tools in PR) | 171 |
| | 3.13.2 | Role of Public Relations in an Organisation | 173 |
| 3.14 | Outcor | mes | 175 |
| 3.15 | Reviev | v Questions | 175 |

viii

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Skill Development Course

Advertising

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors
Dr. M. Shanthi
Dr. B. Sudheeshna
Dept. of Management Studies
S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University

Tirupathi, AP -517 502

S.V. University

Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Advertising

Learning Outcomes

After Successful completion of this course, the students are able to;

- 1. Understand the field of Advertising
- 2. Comprehend opportunities and challenges in Advertising sector
- 3. Prepare a primary advertising model
- 4. Understand applying of related skills
- 5. Examine the scope for making advertising a future career

Unit-1

Introduction of advertising concepts- functions - Types of advertising - Creative advertising messages - Factors determining opportunities of a product/service/Idea

Unit-2

Role of advertising agencies and their responsibilities - scope of their work and functions - Ethical issues - Identifying target groups -Laws in advertising. Advertising Statutory Bodies in India - Role of AAAI (Advertising Agencies Association of India), ASCI (Advertising Standard Council of India)

Unit-3

Types of advertising - Basic characteristics of a typical advertisement - Reaching target groups - Local advertising - Feedback on impact of advertisement - Business promotion.

DIRECTOR

Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Content Advertising

| | | Unit-1 | |
|------|--------|--|----|
| 1.0 | Object | tives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Introd | uction | 1 |
| 1.2 | Adver | tising | 2 |
| | 1.2.1 | Meaning | 2 |
| | 1.2.2 | Facts of Advertising | 3 |
| | 1.2.3 | Definition | 4 |
| 1.3 | Chara | cteristics of Advertising | 5 |
| | 1.3.1 | Objectives of Advertising | 6 |
| | 1.3.2 | Importance of Advertising | 7 |
| | 1.3.3 | Purpose of Advertising | 8 |
| 1.4 | Functi | ons of Advertising | 9 |
| | 1.4.1 | Five M's of Advertising | 10 |
| 1.5 | Types | of Advertising | 13 |
| | 1.5.1 | Qualities of Advertising | 19 |
| | 1.5.2 | Media of Advertising | 19 |
| | 1.5.3 | Benefits of Advertising | 20 |
| | 1.5.4 | Limitations of Advertising | 22 |
| 1.6 | Creati | ve Advertising | 23 |
| | 1.6.1 | Importance of Creative Advertising | 24 |
| | 1.6.2 | Tools for Creative Advertisement | 26 |
| 1.7 | Factor | rs determining opportunities of a product/service/Idea | 26 |
| | 1.7.1 | New Product Design Process | 27 |
| | 1.7.2 | Steps in Tapping Opportunities | 31 |
| 1.8 | Outco | mes | 33 |
| 1.9 | Revie | w Questions | 33 |
| 1.10 | Multir | ole Choice Ouestions | 34 |

iv

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

University
Tirupati

Unit - 2

| 2.0 | Objectives | 37 |
|------|--|--|
| 2.1 | Introduction | 37 |
| 2.2 | Advertising Agency | 38 |
| | 2.2.1 Characteristics of Advertising agency | 38 |
| | 2.2.2 Importance of Advertising Agency | 39 |
| | 2.2.3 Nature of Advertising Agency | 40 |
| | 2.2.4 Scope of Advertising Agencies | 41 |
| | 2.2.5 Types of Advertising Agency | 42 |
| | 2.2.6 Structure of Advertising Agency | 43 |
| 2.3 | Role and Responsibility of Advertising Agency | 44 |
| 2.4 | Scope of Work | 46 |
| | 2.4.1 Functions of Advertising Agencies | 46 |
| 2.5 | Ethical issues in Advertising | 48 |
| 2.6 | Identifying Target Groups | 50 |
| 2.7 | Laws in Advertising | 51 |
| 2.8 | Advertising Statutory Bodies operating Globally | 53 |
| 2.9 | Role of AAAI | 56 |
| 2.10 | Advertising Standards Council of India (ASCI) | 57 |
| 2.11 | Outcomes | 61 |
| 2.12 | Review Questions | 61 |
| 2.13 | Multiple Choice Questions | 62 |
| | (Unit - 3) | |
| 3.0 | Objectives | 65 |
| 3.1 | Introduction | 65 |
| 3.2 | Types of Advertising | 66 |
| 3.3 | Basic Characteristics of a Typical Advertisement | 70 |
| 3.4 | Reaching Target Groups | 73 |
| 3.5 | Local Advertising | 75 |
| | 3.5.1 Types of Local Advertising | 76 |
| | 3.5.2 Advantages of Local Advertising | 77 |
| | 3.5.3 The process of Local Advertising | 78 |
| | | The second secon |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

| 3.6 | Feed-b | ack on impact of Advertisement | 79 |
|------|--------|---|-----|
| | 3.6.2 | The Positive Effects of Advertisement | 80 |
| | 3.6.3 | The Negative Effects of Advertisement | 80 |
| 3.7 | Promo | tion | 81 |
| | 3.7.1 | Characteristics of Promotion | 81 |
| | 3.7.2 | Objectives of Promotion | 82 |
| | 3.7.3 | Types of Promotion | 84 |
| | 3.7.4 | Nature of Promotion | 84 |
| 3.8 | Marke | ting Communication | 85 |
| | 3.8.1 | Importance of Marketing Communication | 86 |
| | 3.8.2 | Elements of Marketing Communication | 88 |
| | 3.8.3 | Promotional Activities | 91 |
| 3.9 | Promo | tion Mix | 93 |
| | 3.9.1 | Objectives | 93 |
| | 3.9.2 | Elements of Promotion Mix | 94 |
| | 3.9.3 | Factors Affecting Marketing Promotion Mix | 95 |
| | 3.9.4 | Role of Advertisement in Business Promotion | 99 |
| 3.10 | Outco | mes | 100 |
| 3.11 | Review | v Questions | 100 |
| 3.12 | Multip | le Choice Questions | 101 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Skill Development Course

Logistics and Supply Chain Management

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors Dr. M. Shanthi Dr. B. Sudheeshna

Dept. of Management Studies S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP -517 502

ance and

S.V. University

Tirupati

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Logistics and Supply Chain Management

Learning Outcomes

At the successful completion of the course, the student will able to;

- 1. Summarize relationship between marketing and Logistic Management
- 2. Understand the concepts of Supply Chain Management in connection with products.
- 3. Understanding various types of seller and suppliers
- 4. Evaluate best logistic method among all means of transport operations
- 5. Analysis of different distribution strategies online and physical distribution
- 6. Compare the Logistics in National and International Scenario.
- 7. Design and develop new methods and models of Logistics in SCM

Unit-1: Introduction to Logistics and Supply Chain Management (SCM)

Functions of Logistics - Structure of logistics - Logistics Costs - Modes of Logistics - Logistics in 21st Century - Role of Supply Chain Management - Design and Development of Supply Chain Network - Different types of Supply Chain Networks

Unit-II: Logistics

Customer Selection - Process -Customer Service and Customer Retention - Relationship Management - Integrating Logistics and Customer Relationship Management

Unit-III: Supply Chain Management

Managing and Estimating Supply Chain Demand - Forecasting Techniques - Supplier Networks – Skills to Manage SCM - Recent Trends in SCM

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO®)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Content Logistics and Supply Chain Management

| | UNIT -1 | |
|------|---|-----|
| 1.0 | Objectives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Introduction | 1 |
| 1.2 | Definition and Concept of Logistics | 2 |
| | 1.2.1 Logistics in the World of Business | 3 |
| | 1.2.2 Origin of Logistics | 3 |
| 1.3 | Components of Logistics | 4 |
| | 1.3.1 Importance of Logistics | 4 |
| | 1.3.2 Functions of Logistics | 5 |
| 1.4 | Logistics Management | 9 |
| | 1.4.1 Types of Logistics Management | 9 |
| | 1.4.2 Nature and Scope of Logistics Management | 10 |
| | 1.4.3 Objectives of Logistics Management | 11 |
| | 1.4.4 Importance of Logistic Management | 12 |
| 1.5 | Structure of Logistics | 12 |
| | 1.5.1 Linkages and Relationships between Purchasing and Logistics | 12 |
| | 1.5.2 Types of Information Flow in Logistics Sector | 15 |
| 1.6 | Logistics Cost | 16 |
| 1.7 | Modes of Logistics | 17 |
| 1.8 | Logistics in 21st Century | 19 |
| 1.9 | Role of Supply Chain Management | 21 |
| 1.10 | Design and Development of Supply Chain Network | 22 |
| | 1.10.1 Factors that Influence Supply Chain Network Design Decisions | 29 |
| | 1.10.2 Benefits of Supply Chain Network Design | 29 |
| | 1.10.3 Role of Network Design in Supply Chain | 30 |
| | 1.10.4 Global Supply Chain Network Design Models | 30 |
| 1.11 | Different Types of Supply Chain Networks | 30 |
| | 1.11.1 Differences between Logistics and Supply Chain | 31 |
| 1.12 | Outcomes | 33 |
| : | ance and | 111 |

DIRECTOR

Centre for Distance and Online Education (CDOE)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

| 1.13 | Review Questions | 33 |
|------|---|-----------|
| 1.14 | Multiple Choice Questions | 34 |
| | Unit -2 | |
| 2.0 | Objectives | 37 |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 37 |
| 2.2 | Customers Selection | 38 |
| | 2.2.1 Phases of Customer Development | 40 |
| 2.3 | Logistics Process | 41 |
| 2.4 | Customer Service in Logistics | 44 |
| | 2.4.1. Elements of Customer Service | 45 |
| | 2.4.2 Factors Why Customer Service in Logistics is of Utmost Importance | 48 |
| | 2.4.3 Importance of customer-service in Logistics | 50 |
| 2.5 | Customer Retention | 55 |
| | 2.5.1 Strategies to Improve Customer Retention | 56 |
| | 2.5.2 Methods and Tools for Customer Retention | 58 |
| | 2.5.3 Benefits of customer retention | 59 |
| | 2.5.4 CRM and Customer Retention | 60 |
| | 2.5.5 Reasons for Terminating Customer Relationship | 61 |
| 2.6 | Customer Relationship Management | 61 |
| | 2.6.1 Importance of CRM | 63 |
| | 2.6.2 Steps in implementing CRM | 64 |
| | 2.6.3 Benefits of CRM | 66 |
| | 2.6.4 CRM System can help your Business Today | 67 |
| | 2.6.5 Components of CRM | 68 |
| | 2.6.6 Types of CRM Technology | 69 |
| | 2.6.7 CRM Examples in Practice | 70 |
| 2.7 | Different types of Logistics and Supply chain Relations | 71 |
| | 2.7.1 Importance of Integrating CRM with SCM | 73 |
| | 2.7.2 Requirements for Achieving Harmonious Relations in Logistics and Supply Chain | 74 |
| 2.8 | Outcomes | 76 |
| 2.9 | Review Questions | 76 |
| 2.10 | Multiple Choice Questions | 77 |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



UNIT-3

| 3.0 | Objectives | 85 |
|------|--|-----|
| 3.1 | Introduction | 85 |
| 3.2 | Supply Chain | 86 |
| | 3.2.1 Supply Chain Model | 87 |
| 3.3 | Supply Chain Management | 88 |
| | 3.3.1 Features of Supply chain Management | 89 |
| | 3.3.2 Components of Supply Chain Management | 89 |
| | 3.3.3 Efficient Functioning of Supply Chain | 90 |
| | 3.3.4 Principles of Supply Chain Management | 91 |
| | 3.3.5 Nature and Objectives of Supply Chain Management | 91 |
| | 3.3.6 Decision Areas in Supply Chain Management | 94 |
| | 3.3.7 Importance of Supply Chain Management | 94 |
| | 3.3.8 Process of Supply Chain Management | 95 |
| | 3.3.9 Goals of Supply Chain Management | 96 |
| | 3.3.10 Focus Areas in SCM | 97 |
| 3.4 | Demand Forecasting | 100 |
| | 3.4.1 Importance of Demand Forecasting | 100 |
| | 3.4.2 Main Roles of Forecasting in Supply Chain Management | 101 |
| | 3.4.3 Advantages of Demand Forecasting | 101 |
| 3.5 | Managing and Estimating supply Chain Demand | 102 |
| | 3.5.1 Importance of Demand Forecasting in Supply Chain | 103 |
| 3.6 | Forecasting Techniques | 104 |
| 3.7 | Suppliers Network | 107 |
| | 3.7.1 Supply Chain Networks | 108 |
| | 3.7.2 Benefits of Supplier Management | 110 |
| | 3.7.3 Key Factors Driving Supplier Management | 111 |
| | 3.7.4 Supplier Management Process | 112 |
| 3.8 | Skills to Manage SCM | 113 |
| | 3.8.1 Core Competencies a Supply chain Manager | 118 |
| 3.9 | Recent Trends in Supply Chain Management | 120 |
| 3.10 | Outcomes | 124 |
| 3.11 | Review Questions | 124 |
| 3.12 | Multiple Choice Questions | 125 |
| | | |

vi

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Tirupati

Skill Development Course

Disaster Management

As per Choice Based Credit System (CBCS)
Common to all Branches

Authors
Dr. M. Shanthi
Dr. B. Sudheeshna
Dept. of Management Studies

S.V. University, Tirupati - 517502 AP



Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP -517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDC:)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

All rights reserved. No part of this publication which is material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the CDOE, SVU.



Director Centre for Distance and Online Education Sri Venkateswara University Tirupathi, AP-517 502

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Disaster Management

Learning Outcomes

After successful completion of the course, the students are able to;

- 1. Understand the nature, cause and effects of disasters
- 2. Comprehend the importance of Disaster Management and the need of awareness
- 3. Acquire knowledge on disaster preparedness, recovery remedial measures and personal precautions
- 4. Volunteer in pre and post disaster management service activities

Unit-I

Introduction of Disaster - Different types of disasters- Natural- (flood, cyclone, earthquake, Famine and pandemic) - Accidental- (Fire, Blasting, Chemical leakage, Rail, Aviation, Road boat tragedies and nuclear pollution) - Disaster Management Act 2005

Unit-II

Causes and immediate effects of Disasters - Preparedness of disasters - Precautions - Dissemination of information - Nature and concepts - Role of National Disaster Management Authority and Role of Government and non governmental organizations in protecting human livestock and natural resources.-Use of technology -Role of Citizens and Youth in the prevention.

Unit-III

Post disaster effects - short term - Procedures for Rehabilitation and Recovery - Role of volunteers and Safety Precautions - Long term remedial and preventive measures – Collection, filing and storage of information - Case studies.

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDO©)
Sri Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.



Content **Disaster Management**

| | | Unit-1 | |
|-----|------------------------------|---------------------------------|----|
| 1.0 | Object | tives | 1 |
| 1.1 | Introdu | uction | 1 |
| 1.2 | Disast | er | 1 |
| 1.3 | Types | of Disasters | 2 |
| | 1.3.1 | Earthquakes | 3 |
| | 1.3.2 | Tunami | 5 |
| | 1.3.3 | Cyclones | 7 |
| | 1.3.4 | Floods | 10 |
| | 1.3.5 | Droughts | 12 |
| | 1.3.6 | Landslides | 14 |
| | 1.3.7 | Forest Fires | 16 |
| | 1.3.8 | Famine | 18 |
| | 1.3.9 | Pandemic | 20 |
| 1.4 | Man-made Disasters | | 28 |
| 1.5 | Accidental Disaster | | 29 |
| | 1.5.1 | Fire Accidents | 29 |
| | | 1.5.1.1 Fire Safety Precautions | 30 |
| | 1.5.2 | Blasting | 32 |
| | 1.5.3 | Rail Accidents | 33 |
| | 1.5.4 | Aviation Accidents | 34 |
| | 1.5.5 | Road Accidents | 36 |
| | 1.5.6 | Boat Tragedies | 37 |
| 1.6 | Nuclear Pollution | | 39 |
| | 1.6.1 | Causes of Nuclear Pollution | 39 |
| | 1.6.2 | Effects of Nuclear Pollution | 40 |
| | 1.6.3 | Prevention of Nuclear Pollution | 41 |
| 1.7 | Disaster Management Act 2005 | | |

iv

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCE)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

University
Tirupati

REGISTRAR
8.V. UNIVERSIT

| | 1.7.1 | Scope and Objective | 42 | | | |
|------|---|---|----|--|--|--|
| | 1.7.2 | Criticism of the Disaster Management Act | 43 | | | |
| 1.8 | Outco | mes | 43 | | | |
| 1.9 | Revie | w Questions | 43 | | | |
| | | Unit-2 | | | | |
| 2.0 | Object | tives | 45 | | | |
| 2.1 | Induction | | | | | |
| 2.2 | Causes and Immediate Effects of Disasters | | | | | |
| | 2.2.1 | Causes of Disasters | 46 | | | |
| | 2.2.2 | Effects of Disasters | 48 | | | |
| 2.3 | Prepar | redness of Disasters | 50 | | | |
| | 2.3.1 | Measures of Disaster Preparedness | 50 | | | |
| 2.4 | Precau | ntions or Steps for Preparedness of Disaster Strikes by Communities | 53 | | | |
| 2.5 | Disser | mination of Information | 54 | | | |
| | 2.5.1 | Importance of Information | 55 | | | |
| | 2.5.2 | Nature of Dissemination of Information | 55 | | | |
| | 2.5.3 | Concepts of Dissemination | 56 | | | |
| | 2.5.4 | Channels for Disseminating Information | 57 | | | |
| 2.6 | Role of National Disaster Management Authority | | | | | |
| | 2.6.1 | Evolution of NDMA | 58 | | | |
| | 2.6.2 | Functions and Responsibilities of NDMA | 58 | | | |
| | 2.6.3 | Institutional Framework for Disaster Management in India | 59 | | | |
| | 2.6.4 | Role & Responsibility of SDMA | 59 | | | |
| | 2.6.5 | Role & Responsibility of SEC | 60 | | | |
| | 2.6.6 | Role & Responsibility of DDMA | 61 | | | |
| 2.7 | Role of Government and non Governmental Organizations in Protecting Human | | | | | |
| | Livestock and Natural Resources | | | | | |
| 2.8 | Use of | Technology in Disaster Management | 62 | | | |
| 2.9 | Role of Citizen in Prevention of Disaster | | | | | |
| 2.10 | Role of Youth 6 | | | | | |
| 2.11 | Outcomes | | | | | |
| 2.12 | Review Questions | | | | | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDOS)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati

Unit-3

| 3.0 | Objectives | | |
|------|--|---|----|
| 3.1 | Introduction | | |
| 3.2 | Post D | 68 | |
| 3.3 | Disast | 69 | |
| 3.4 | Procedures for Rehabilitation and Recovery | | |
| | 3.4.1 | Rehabilitation | 71 |
| | 3.4.2 | Types of Rehabilitation | 72 |
| | 3.4.3 | Procedure for Rehabilitation | 72 |
| | 3.4.4 | Procedure for Recovery | 73 |
| | | 3.4.4.1 Disaster Recovery Plan | 73 |
| | | 3.4.4.2 Disaster Plan | 74 |
| | | 3.4.4.3 Benefits of Disaster Recovery Plan | 75 |
| | | 3.4.4.4 Strategies and Tools for Disaster Recovery Plan | 75 |
| | | 3.4.4.5 Steps of a Disaster Recovery Plan | 76 |
| 3.5 | Role o | f Volunteers in Disasters | 77 |
| 3.6 | Role of Safety Precautions | | |
| 3.7 | Preventive measures of Disaster | | |
| 3.8 | Collection-Filling-Storing of Information | | |
| | 3.8.1 | Data Collection | 83 |
| | 3.8.2 | Filling of Data | 84 |
| | 3.8.3 | Storage of Information | 85 |
| | | 3.8.3.1 Storage Management and Disaster Recovery | 85 |
| 3.9 | Case study | | |
| 3.10 | Outcomes | | |
| 3.11 | Review Questions | | |

DIRECTOR
Centre for Distance and
Online Education (CDCC)
Srl Venkateswara University
TIRUPATI - 517 502.

S.V. University
Tirupati